Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 14
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 0.12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 2.1.11
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).
If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.
# Table of Contents

**unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**  
11
Nehemiah  
Introduction to Nehemiah 12  
Nehemiah 1 14  
Nehemiah 2 28  
Nehemiah 3 50  
Nehemiah 4 85  
Nehemiah 5 110  
Nehemiah 6 132  
Nehemiah 7 152  
Nehemiah 8 228  
Nehemiah 9 247  
Nehemiah 10 290  
Nehemiah 11 334  
Nehemiah 12 372  
Nehemiah 13 421

**unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**  
453
Abstract Nouns 454  
Active or Passive 456  
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information 459  
Background Information 462  
Biblical Distance 465  
Biblical Money 468  
Biblical Weight 470  
Doublet 472  
Ellipsis 474  
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' 476  
First, Second or Third Person 478  
Forms of You 480  
Fractions 481  
Hebrew Months 484  
How to Translate Names 487  
Hyperbole 491  
Idiom 495  
Litotes 497  
Merism 499  
Metaphor 501  
Metonymy 507  
Numbers 509  
Ordinal Numbers 512  
Parallelism 514  
Personification 517  
Possession 519
Pronouns
Rhetorical Question
Simile
Symbolic Action
Synecdoche
Translate Unknowns

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Aaron
Abraham, Abram
adversary, enemy
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
afflict, affliction, distress
Al
alien, foreign, foreigner
altar
amen, truly
Ammon, Ammonite
Amorite
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
appoint, appointed
armor, armory
Artaxerxes
Asaph
Ashdod, Azotus
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
atonement, atone, atoned
awe, awesome
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
Balaam
Bashan
Beersheba
Benjamin, Benjamite
Bethlehem, Ephrathah
bind, bond, bound
bless, blessed, blessing
blot out, wipe out
bow and arrow, a bow
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
bread
brother
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
burnt offering, offering by fire
camel
Canaan, Canaanite
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
Chaldea, Chaldean
chief
command, commandment
confess, confession
consecrate, consecrated, consecration
court, courtyard
covenant
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
cry, cry out, outcry
cupbearer
curse, cursed, cursing
David
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
dominion
donkey, mule
Egypt, Egyptian
Elam, Elamites
elder, older, old
Ephraim, Ephraimite
evil, wicked, unpleasant
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
exalt, exalted, exaltation
exile, exiled
Ezra
face, facial
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
famine
fast, fasting
favor, favorable, favoritism
fear, afraid, dread
feast, feasting
fig
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
firstborn
firstfruits
flesh
flock, herd
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
forsake, forsaken, leave
frankincense 628
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful 629
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway 631
Gibeon, Gibeonite 632
Gilead, Gileadite 633
Gilgal 634
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt ... 635
Girgashites 636
glory, glorious, glorify 637
God 639
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry 641
gold, golden 643
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best 644
govern, government, governor, proconsul 646
grace, gracious 647
grain offering 648
grain, grainfields 649
grape, grapevine 650
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place 651
hand 652
harp, harpist 654
head 655
heart 656
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly 657
Hebrew 658
high priest, chief priests 659
Hittite 661
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred 662
horse, warhorse, horseback 664
horseman 665
house 666
inherit, inheritance, heir 667
iniquity 668
instruct, instruction, instructors 669
Israel, Israelites 670
Jebus, Jebusite 671
Jericho 672
Jerusalem 673
Jew, Jewish 675
Joshua 676
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing 677
Judah 679
Judea 680
judge, judgment 681
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification 683
king, kingdom, kingship 685
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word/Phrase</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kingdom</td>
<td>686</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish</td>
<td>688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law</td>
<td>689</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levi, Levite, Levitical</td>
<td>691</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life, live, living, alive</td>
<td>692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten</td>
<td>694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>livestock, animals</td>
<td>695</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lord, Lord, master, sir</td>
<td>696</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lots, casting lots</td>
<td>698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love, beloved</td>
<td>699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manna</td>
<td>701</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mercy, merciful</td>
<td>702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messenger</td>
<td>704</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>might, mighty, mighty works</td>
<td>705</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miracle, wonder, sign</td>
<td>706</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mizpah</td>
<td>708</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moab, Moabite</td>
<td>709</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock</td>
<td>710</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mordecai</td>
<td>711</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moses</td>
<td>712</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mourn, mourner, weeping</td>
<td>713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>714</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nation</td>
<td>715</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nebuchadnezzar</td>
<td>716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nehemiah</td>
<td>717</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new moon</td>
<td>718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noble, nobleman, royal official</td>
<td>719</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oath, swear, swearing, swear by</td>
<td>720</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil</td>
<td>721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olive</td>
<td>722</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor</td>
<td>723</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs</td>
<td>724</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oversee, overseer</td>
<td>725</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pagan</td>
<td>726</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patient, patience, impatient</td>
<td>727</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people of God</td>
<td>728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people, people group,</td>
<td>729</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perizzite</td>
<td>731</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue</td>
<td>732</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persia, Persians</td>
<td>733</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharaoh, king of Egypt</td>
<td>734</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise, praised, praiseworthy</td>
<td>735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pray, prayer</td>
<td>736</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation</td>
<td>737</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priest, priesthood</td>
<td>739</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...</td>
<td>741</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
prison, prisoner, imprison
profane, profaned
promise, promised
Promised Land
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
prosper, prosperity, prosperous
prostrate, worship
proud, pride, proudful
province, provincial
provoke, provoked, provocation
pure, purify, purification
queen
Ramah
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
rebuke
redeem, redeemer, redemption
reign, rule
remnant
repent, repentance
rest, rested, restless
restore, restoration
return
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules
Sabbath
sackcloth
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
Samaria, Samaritan
sanctuary
scribe
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea
seed, semen
seek, search, look for
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
set apart
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
shield
sign, proof, reminder
silver
sin offering
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
Sinai, Mount Sinai
Solomon
son
spear, spearmen
spirit, spiritual
statute
storehouse
strength, strengthen, strong
stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel
sword, swordsmen
tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,
teach, teaching, untaught
temple
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
time, untimely, date
to minister, ministry
transgress, transgression
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...
trumpet, trumpeters
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness
understand, understanding, thinking
vineyard
vow
walk, walked
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
wine, wineskin, new wine
winepress
Yahweh
Zerubbabel

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Nehemiah
Introduction to Nehemiah

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Nehemiah

1. Nehemiah returns to Jerusalem and inspects the walls (1:1-2:20)
2. The people rebuild the walls of Jerusalem (3:1-4:23)
3. Nehemiah helps the poor and provides an unselfish example (5:1–19)
4. Enemies try to slow down the work, but the people finish the walls (6:1–19)
5. Nehemiah lists the people who returned from exile (7:6–73)
6. Ezra reads the Law of Yahweh and the people respond (8:1-10:39)
7. Nehemiah lists the people who lived in and around Jerusalem (11:1–36)
8. Nehemiah lists the priests and Levites (12:1–26)
9. The people dedicate the walls of Jerusalem (12:27–47)

What is the Book of Nehemiah about?

A Jew named Nehemiah lived in Persia and worked for King Artaxerxes. Nehemiah received a report that the walls around Jerusalem were broken down. Nehemiah returned to Jerusalem to help rebuild the city walls. The walls around the city helped protect the city against armies and invaders.

How should the title of this book be translated?

The Book of Nehemiah is named for a Jewish leader named Nehemiah. Translators can use the traditional title “Nehemiah.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “The Book about Nehemiah.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Why were Israelites not allowed to marry people from other nations?

Foreigners worshiped many false gods. Yahweh did not allow his people to marry foreigners. He knew this would cause the people of Israel to worship false gods. (See: god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry)

Did all of the people of Israel return to their homeland?

Many of the Jews remained in Babylon instead of returning to the Promised Land. Many of them were successful in Babylon and desired to remain there. However, this meant that they were unable to worship Yahweh in Jerusalem as their ancestors had done. (See: Promised Land)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

How does the Book of Nehemiah use the term “Israel”?

The Book of Nehemiah uses the term “Israel” to refer to the kingdom of Judah. It was mostly made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. The other ten tribes had ended their loyalty to any kings descended from David. God allowed the Assyrians to conquer the other ten tribes and take them into exile. As a result, they mixed with other people groups and did not return to the land of Israel. (See: Israel, Israelites)
Are the events in the Book of Nehemiah told in the order that they actually happened?

Some of the events in the Book of Nehemiah are not told in the order they actually happened. Translators should pay attention to notes that signal when events are probably out of order.
Nehemiah 1

Nehemiah 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting
“The words of Nehemiah son of Hacaliah:”
This phrase serves as an introduction to this entire book.

Special concepts in this chapter

Repentance
This chapter is a single long record of Nehemiah's repentance on behalf of the people. (See: repent, repentance)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

I
While the author of this book is probably Ezra, the word “I” always refers to Nehemiah.

Israel
It is uncertain to whom "Israel" refers. It probably does not refer to the northern kingdom of Israel. Neither does it likely refer to the twelve tribes of Israel. Instead, it is probably a reference to Israel in the sense of the surviving people group. At Nehemiah's time, this people group exclusively comprised the tribe of Judah because the other tribes had already been scattered throughout the entire Near East, where they lost their identity, for the most part.
Nehemiah 1:1

Nehemiah...Hakaliah (ULT)
I am Nehemiah...Hakaliah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

in the month of Kislev

“Kislev” is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and How to Translate Names)

in the twentieth year (ULT)
in the twentieth year after King Artaxerxes began to rule the Persian Empire (UST)

Nehemiah is referring to the number of years that Artaxerxes had been reigning as king. Alternate translation: “in the twentieth year of the reign of Artaxerxes, King of Persia” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Ordinal Numbers)

in the fortress of Susa (ULT)
in Susa, the capital of Persia (UST)

This was one of the royal cities of Persian kings, located in the country of Elam. It was a large, fortified city with high walls surrounding it.

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• Nehemiah
• the fortress of

Translation Words - UST

• son of
• I am Nehemiah
• the capital of Persia
Nehemiah 1:2

Hanani (ULT)
Hanani (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

one from my brothers, Hanani (ULT)
Hanani, one of my brothers (UST)

Hanani was Nehemiah’s biological brother.

Hanani, came with some people from Judah

“Hanani came from Judah with some other people”

the Jews who had escaped, the remnant of the Jews who were there (ULT)
the Jews who had escaped when soldiers forced many Jew to go to the nation of Babylon many years earlier and remained in Judah (UST)

These two phrases refer to the same group of people. Possible meanings are 1) the few Jews who were taken as exiles to Babylon but escaped and returned to live in Jerusalem or 2) the few Jews who had escaped from those who were trying to take them into exile in Babylon and so remained in Jerusalem. Since it is unclear from where they escaped, it may be best not to specify in the translation. Alternate translation: “the Jews who had escaped the exile and who remained in Jerusalem” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jews
• from my brothers
• from Judah
• Jerusalem
• the remnant
• about

Translation Words - UST

• the Jews
• of my brothers
• who were from the province of Judah
• the city of Jerusalem
• when soldiers forced many Jew to go to the nation of Babylon many years earlier
• about
Nehemiah 1:3

And they said to me (ULT)
They said to me (UST)

Here “They” refers to Hanani and the other people who had come from Judah.

in the province (ULT)
in Jerusalem (UST)

Here “province” refers to Judah as an administrative district under the Persian Empire. Alternate translation: “the province of Judah” or “Judah” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

because the wall of Jerusalem has been broken open, and its gates have been set on fire (ULT)
The soldiers of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon broke down the wall of Jerusalem so their army could go through it, and they completely burned the gates of the city (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “armies have broken open the wall of Jerusalem and have set its gates on fire” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• are in...trouble
• Jerusalem
• the captivity
• and in disgrace
• and its gates
• in the province
• on fire

Translation Words - UST

• are living in a...difficult...situation
• Jerusalem
• did not go to Babylon
• and shameful
• and...the gates of the city
• in Jerusalem
• they completely burned
Nehemiah 1:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• the God of
• and praying
• and...I continued grieving
• fasting

Translation Words - UST

• the...in heaven
• God who is
• and...prayed
• I mourned
• ate no food

ULT

4 And so it was when I heard these words, I sat down and wept, and for days I continued grieving and I was fasting and praying before the face of the God of heaven.

UST

4 When I heard these words, I sat down and cried. For several days I mourned, I ate no food, and I prayed to the God who is in heaven.
Nehemiah 1:5

Then I said (ULT)
I said (UST)

Nehemiah tells what he prayed. Alternate translation: “Then I said to Yahweh” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Yahweh (ULT)
Yahweh (UST)

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

with those who love him and who keep his commandments (ULT)
everyone who loves you and obeys your commands (UST)

Since Nehemiah is speaking to Yahweh, the pronouns “him” and “his” can be translated as “you” and “your.”
Alternate translation: “who love you and keep your commandments” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- his commandments
- with those who love him
- God of
- the...God
- and steadfast love
- the covenant
- Yahweh
- Please
- and awesome
- who keeps

Translation Words - UST

- the...in heaven
- your commands
- everyone who loves you
- you are...God who is
- You are the...God
- to faithfully love
- your promise
- Yahweh
- O
- and awesome
- You keep
Nehemiah 1:6

and your eyes open (ULT)
and see me (UST)

“look at me.” Here “open your eyes” is a metaphor that represents paying attention to someone. Alternate translation: “pay attention to me” (See: Metaphor)

to...to hear the prayer of your servant (ULT)
and listen to...I am praying...your servant (UST)

“so that you may hear the prayer that I, your servant, am praying.” The word “servant” refers to Nehemiah. This is how a person would address his superior in order to show humility and respect.

day by day and night (ULT)
today...during the day and at night (UST)

By saying that he prays both during the day and during the night, Nehemiah emphasizes the frequency of his prayers. Alternate translation: “all the time” (See: Merism)

Both I and the house of my father (ULT)
I myself, and all of my relatives...also (UST)

Here the word “house” represents family. Alternate translation: “Both I and my family” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• the sins of
• we have sinned
• we have sinned
• the sons of
• the sons of
• and confessing
• Israel
• Israel
• to...the prayer of
• I
• my father
• for
• the sins of (2)
• your servant
• your servants
• and the house of

Translation Words - UST

• the sins of
• we have sinned
• we...have sinned
• the Israelite people
- the Israelites
- I am confessing
- the Israelite people
- the Israelites
- praying
- I
- and all of my relatives
- for
- Because of (2)
- I am...your servant
- your servants
- and all of my relatives
Nehemiah 1:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• the commandments
• you commanded
• Moses
• and the statutes
• and the rules
• we have...kept
• your servant

Translation Words - UST

• your commands
• you commanded us to do
• Many years ago...Moses gave us
• and your rules
• and all the laws
• we have...obeyed them
• your servant

ULT

7 Wickedly, wickedly we have acted against you, and we have not kept the commandments, and the statutes, and the rules which you commanded your servant Moses.

UST

7 We have acted very wickedly towards you. Many years ago your servant Moses gave us your commands and your rules and all the laws that you commanded us to do, but we have not obeyed them.
Nehemiah 1:8

Connecting Statement:
Nehemiah continues praying to God.

Please recall (ULT)
Please remember (UST)

To “call to mind” is an idiom that means to remember. Alternate translation: “Please remember” (See: Idiom)

the word which you commanded your servant Moses (ULT)
the promise that you told your servant Moses (UST)

The pronouns “you” and “your” refer to God and so are singular. (See: Forms of You)

When you yourselves act unfaithfully, I myself will scatter you (ULT)
If you live unfaithfully and disobey me, I will scatter you (UST)

The pronouns “you” and “your” are plural and refer to the Israelite people. (See: Forms of You)

I...will scatter you among the nations (ULT)
will scatter you among the nations (UST)

Yahweh speaks of causing the Israelite people to live in other nations as if he scattered them like one would scatter seeds. Alternate translation: “I will cause you to live among the nations” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• you commanded
• When you...act unfaithfully
• Moses
• among the nations
• your servant

Translation Words - UST

• you told
• If...live unfaithfully and disobey me
• Moses
• among the nations
• your servant
Nehemiah 1:9

but when you return to me and you follow my commandments and you do (ULT)
But...if...you become loyal to me again and obey my commands and do (UST)

The pronouns "you" and "your" are plural and refer to the Israelite people. (See: Forms of You)

under the most distant heavens (ULT)
to a very remote place (UST)

Yahweh speaks of places on the earth that are very far away as being “under the farthest skies.” Alternate translation: “to places very far away” (See: Idiom)

there, to the place where I have chosen to establish my name (ULT)
to this place where I chose to show you how great and glorious I am (UST)

This phrase refers to Jerusalem, where the temple was located. Alternate translation: “to Jerusalem, where I have chosen...remain” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

there...where I have chosen to establish my name (ULT)
where I chose to show you how great and glorious I am (UST)

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “where I have chosen to dwell” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• heavens
• my commandments
• my name
• but when you return

Translation Words - UST

• to a very remote place
• my commands
• to show you how great and glorious I am
• But...if...you become loyal...again
Nehemiah 1:10

General Information:

Nehemiah continues his prayer.

Now they are (ULT)
We are (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in Nehemiah's prayer. Here he begins to make his request based on Yahweh's promise.

Now they are your servants (ULT)
We are your servants (UST)

The word “they” refers to the Israelite people.

by your great power and by your strong hand (ULT)
You did this easily because you are very powerful (UST)

Here “hand” represents strength or power. Together, these two phrases form a doublet that emphasizes the intensity of Yahweh's power. Alternate translation: “by your great power and by your mighty strength” or “by your very powerful strength” (See: Metonymy and Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• you have rescued
• strong
• and by your...hand
• and your people
• by your...power
• your servants

Translation Words - UST

• you have delivered from slavery
• you are very powerful
• you are very powerful
• We are the people
• You did this easily because
• your servants
Nehemiah 1:11

The prayer of your servant (ULT)
My prayer, I who am your servant (UST)

Here “servant” refers to Nehemiah. This is how a person would address his superior in order to show humility and respect. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 1:6.

The prayer of your servants (ULT)
The prayers of all your people (UST)

Here “servants” refers to the rest of the Israelite people who would have been praying for Yahweh to act on behalf of his people and on behalf of Jerusalem.

The ones who delight to honor your name (ULT)
Who have great joy when they honor you for who you are and what you do (UST)

Here “name” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “who delight to honor you” (See: Metonymy)

And grant him mercy in the sight of this man (ULT)
I want to ask the king for something. If he is displeased with me, he may kill me…and cause the king to be merciful to me as I do this (UST)

Here “him” refers to Nehemiah, who refers to himself in the third person to express his humility before God, and “this man” refers to Artaxerxes, the king of Persia.

In the sight of this man (ULT)
I want to ask the king for something. If he is displeased with me, he may kill me (UST)

Nehemiah speaks of the king’s attitude or disposition as if it were how the king viewed something. Alternate translation: “grant that the king will have mercy on me” (See: Metaphor)

Now I myself was cupbearer to the king (ULT)
At that time, I was serving as one of the most trusted servants to the king (UST)

This is background information about Nehemiah’s role in the king’s court. Your language may have a special way to mark background information. (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• to honor
• my Lord
• mercy
• your name
• Please
• the prayer of
• the prayer of
• Now...give success to
cupbearer
to the king
your servant
your servants
your servant

Translation Words - UST

• when they honor you for who you are and what you do
• Yahweh
to be merciful to me as I do this
• when they honor you for who you are and what you do
• O
• my prayer
• the prayers of
• So now...you would make...successful
• serving as one of the most trusted servants
to the king
I who am your servant
all your people
me
Nehemiah 2

Nehemiah 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the account of the construction of the wall. Many scholars believe these chapters teach valuable lessons on leadership (Nehemiah 2-6).

Special concepts in this chapter

Nehemiah’s character

Apparently, Nehemiah’s character made an impression on the king. It was very unusual for a king to be so concerned with one of his servants. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Cultural Customs

In ancient Persia, they thought it was important for their conquered peoples to practice their own cultural customs. It was thought that this independence promoted peace in their vast kingdom. The rebuilding of Jerusalem may have been seen as a way to allow for the Jewish cultural practices.

Yahweh’s control

Yahweh is seen as very powerful. He is able to provide for his people, even through a foreign king. (See: people of God)
Nehemiah 2:1

in the month of Nisan (ULT)
I prayed like this for four months (UST)

“Nisan” is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: Hebrew Months)

the twentieth year of Artaxerxes the king (ULT)
King Artaxerxes had been ruling the Persian Empire for almost twenty years (UST)

“in the 20th year that Artaxerxes was king” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Now...never (ULT)
never (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Nehemiah tells background information about his demeanor before the king. (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• sad
• Artaxerxes
• the king
• to the king
• wine
• the wine

Translation Words - UST

• sad
• Artaxerxes had been ruling the Persian Empire for almost
• King
• to the king
• to serve wine...during a feast
• the wine
Nehemiah 2:2

And the king, he said to me (ULT)
So he asked me (UST)

“So the king”

Why is your face sad (ULT)
Why are you sad (UST)

Here Nehemiah is referred to by his face because the face shows one’s emotions. Alternate translation: “Why are you so sad” (See: Synecdoche)

This can be nothing but sadness of heart (ULT)
It must be that you are sad in your inner being (UST)

This speaks of Nehemiah being sad as if his heart were sad, since the heart is often considered the center of emotions. Alternate translation: “You must be very sad” (See: Synecdoche)

Then I was very much afraid (ULT)
Then I was very much afraid, because it was not proper to be sad when I came to the king (UST)

As Nehemiah prepares to answer, he is afraid because he does not know how the king will respond.

Translation Words - ULT

• Then I was...afraid
• heart
• sad
• is your face
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• Then I was...afraid, because it was not proper to be sad when I came to the king
• in your inner being
• are...sad
• you
• he
Nehemiah 2:3

The king—may he exist forever (ULT)
Your majesty, I hope you will live a very long time!
But...can I (UST)

Nehemiah is showing honor to King Artaxerxes. Here “forever” is an exaggeration that refers to a long life. Alternate translation: “Long live the king” or “May the king have a long life” (See: Hyperbole)

Why should not my face be sad (ULT)
how...prevent myself from being sad (UST)

Here Nehemiah uses this rhetorical question to tell the king that he has a reason to be sad. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “I have very good reasons to be sad.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the house of the tombs of my fathers (ULT)
where the graves of my ancestors are (UST)

“the place where my ancestors are buried”

and her gates—they have been devoured by fire (ULT)
They have even completely burned the city gates (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fire has destroyed its gates” or “our enemy has burned its gates” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- may he exist
- my fathers
- and her gates
- should...be sad
- by fire
- my face
- the tombs of
- to the king
- The king
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- But...can I
- my ancestors
- even...the city gates
- from being sad
- burned
- myself
- the graves of
- to the king
- Your majesty
where...are
Nehemiah 2:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- the God of
- And I prayed
- the king
- are...seeking
- For

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- God in
- But before I answered him, I prayed
- The king
- want me to do for you
- So

ULT

4 And the king, he said to me, “For what thing are you seeking?” And I prayed to the God of heaven.

UST

4 The king replied to me, “So what do you want me to do for you?” But before I answered him, I prayed to God in heaven.
Nehemiah 2:5

And I replied to the king (ULT)
Then I replied to the king (UST)

“Then I replied to the king”

your servant (ULT)
I (UST)

Nehemiah refers to himself this way to show his submission to the king.

before your face (ULT)
you (UST)

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “in your judgment” (See: Metaphor)

the city of the tombs of my fathers (ULT)
the city of Jerusalem...where the graves of my ancestors are (UST)

“the city where my ancestors are buried”

and I will rebuild her (ULT)
in order that I may help people to rebuild the city (UST)

Nehemiah does not plan to do all of the building himself, but he will be the leader of the work. Alternate translation: “that I and my people may rebuild it” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• has done good
• Judah
• my fathers
• the tombs of
• to the king
• the king
• to
• your servant

Translation Words - UST

• have pleased
• Judah province
• my ancestors
• the graves of
• to the king
• you
• are
• I
Nehemiah 2:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- will you return
- and the queen
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- will you return
- While the queen
- the king

ULT
6 And the king replied to me (and the queen was sitting beside him), “Until when will you be leaving and when will you return?” And it was good before the face of the king to send me, so I gave to him the dates.

UST
6 While the queen was sitting beside the king, he asked me, “If I allow you to go, how long will you be gone? When will you return?” I told the king how long I would be gone, and the king gave me permission to go, and I told him what day I wanted to leave.
Nehemiah 2:7

may letters be given to me (ULT)
please give me letters (UST)

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “may you give letters to me” (See: Active or Passive)

Beyond the River (ULT)
the area beyond the Euphrates River (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa.

Translation Words - ULT

• will permit me to continue
• Judah
• to the king
• the king
• to
• for
• the governors of

Translation Words - UST

• please order them to allow me to travel safely
• Judah
• to the king
• you
• you
• addressed to
• the governors who oversee

ULT
7 Then I said to the king, “If it is good to the king, may letters be given to me for the governors of Beyond the River which will permit me to continue until when I come to Judah.

UST
7 I also said to the king, “If you consider it good, please give me letters addressed to the governors who oversee the area beyond the Euphrates River. In these letters, please order them to allow me to travel safely through their provinces on my way to and from Judah.”
Nehemiah 2:8

Asaph (ULT)
Asaph (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

the...because...good hand of my God was on me (ULT)
because my God was kindly acting for me (UST)

God's "good hand" represents his "favor." Alternate translation: "God's favor was upon me" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• my God
• good
• Asaph
• the...because...hand of
• the gates of
• the city
• belongs to the king
• king...the
• was on me
• the fortress
• the keeper of
• next to the house

Translation Words - UST

• my God
• was kindly acting
• Asaph
• because
• the gates of
• the city
• royal
• The king
• for me
• the fortress
• the man who takes care of
• near the temple

ULT
8 Also, a letter to Asaph the keeper of the forest which belongs to the king, that he may give to me timbers to make beams for the gates of the fortress which is next to the house, and for the wall of the city, and for the house in which I will live." And the king gave this to me, because the good hand of my God was on me.

UST
8 Also, please write a letter to Asaph, the man who takes care of your royal forest in that area. In this letter, please tell him to give me timber to make the beams to support the gates of the fortress that is near the temple, and timber for making the walls of the city, and for building the house in which I will live." The king did what I requested him to do, because my God was kindly acting for me.
Nehemiah 2:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• and horsemen
• the king
• the king
• the governors of
• officers of

Translation Words - UST

• and soldiers riding on horses
• the king
• The king
• where the governors of...lived
• some...officers

ULT
9 And I came to the governors of Beyond the River and I gave to them the letters of the king. And he, the king, sent with me officers of the army and horsemen.

UST
9 I left to travel to Judah. The king sent some army officers and soldiers riding on horses to accompany me, to protect me. When I came to where the governors of the provinces west of the Euphrates River lived, I gave them the letters from the king.
When Sanballat the Horonite and Tobiah the Ammonite servant heard this, they were upset with great displeasure at it, that a man had come who was seeking the good of the sons of Israel.

Two government officials, Sanballat from a village near Horon and Tobiah, the official from the Ammon people, heard that I had come to help the Israelite people. When they heard this, they became very angry.

Translation Words - ULT

• the sons of
• Israel
• the good of
• Ammonite
• who was seeking

Translation Words - UST

• the Israelite people
• the Israelite people
• to help
• from the Ammon people
• to help
Nehemiah 2:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem

ULT
11 And I came to Jerusalem and I was there three days.

UST
11 But I came to Jerusalem and stayed there three days.
Nehemiah 2:12

had given to my heart (ULT)
had told me (UST)

Here Nehemiah’s “heart” refers to his thoughts and will. Alternate translation: “had inspired me” or “had led me” (See: Metonymy)

And there was no animal with me (ULT)
We...had one animal (UST)

“There were no animals with me”

Translation Words - ULT

- my God
- my heart
- for Jerusalem
- And...animal

Translation Words - UST

- God
- had told me
- in Jerusalem
- animal

ULT

12 And I arose in the night, myself and a few people with me. And I did not tell any man what my God had given to my heart to do for Jerusalem. And there was no animal with me, except only that animal on which I was riding.

UST

12 Then I went out of the city at night, and I took a few men with me. We only had one animal, the one that I was riding on. I said nothing to anyone about what God had told me to do in Jerusalem.
Nehemiah 2:13

General Information:

A few men accompanied Nehemiah on this inspection, but he speaks in the first person because he was the primary person. (See: First, Second or Third Person)

And I went out by night by the Gate of the Valley (ULT)
We left the city at night, going out through the Valley Gate (UST)

“At night, I went out through the Valley Gate”

the Dragons (ULT)
called the Jackal (UST)
a wild dog

the Gate of Dung (ULT)
the gate called the Rubbish Gate (UST)

Presumably, refuse was removed from the city through this gate.

which had been broken open, and the wooden gates were destroyed by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which Israel's enemies had broken open, and the wooden gates which their enemies had destroyed with fire” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- by the Gate of
- the Gate of
- and the gates
- by fire

Translation Words - UST

- of Jerusalem
- through...Gate
- the gate...Gate
- and all the gates
- burned
Nehemiah 2:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And I passed
- the Gate of
- the King

Translation Words - UST

- Then we came
- Gate
- called the Royal

ULT
14 And I passed by the Gate of the Spring and to the Reservoir of the King. And there was no space for the animal to pass by underneath me.

UST
14 Then we came to the Fountain Gate and to the pool called the Royal Pool, but the animal that I was riding could not get through the narrow opening there.
Nehemiah 2:15

And I was following the creek up by night and I was inspecting the wall; and I turned around and I entered by the Gate of the Valley, and I returned (ULT)
So we turned and went along the Kidron Valley that night and I inspected the wall there. Then we turned around and came back to the Valley Gate, and there we entered the city again (UST)

The other men with Nehemiah also followed him. Alternate translation: “So we went up...and we turned back” (See: Synecdoche)

by the Gate of the Valley (ULT)
to the Valley Gate (UST)

“through the Valley Gate”

Translation Words - ULT

• by the Gate of
• and I turned around
• and I returned

Translation Words - UST

• to...Gate
• Then we turned around
• and there we entered the city again
Nehemiah 2:16

or the rest who were doing the work (ULT)
or any of the others who would be helping me in the work that I wanted to do (UST)

This refers to the men who would later rebuild the walls. Alternate translation: “the others who would later do the work of rebuilding the walls” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• and to the Jews
• or the priests
• And the rulers
• or the nobles
• they did...know

Translation Words - UST

• to the Jewish leaders
• or the priests
• The city officials
• or the nobles
• know

ULT

16 And the rulers, they did not know where I went or what I was doing, and to the Jews, or the priests, or the nobles, or the rulers, or the rest who were doing the work, I had not yet so communicated.

UST

16 The city officials did not know where I had gone, or what I was doing, because I had not yet told anyone about what I planned to do. I had not said anything about it to the Jewish leaders or the priests or the nobles or the city officials or any of the others who would be helping me in the work that I wanted to do.
Nehemiah 2:17

You see the bad situation (ULT)
You all know very well the terrible things (UST)

Here “you” is plural, referring to all the people mentioned in Nehemiah 2:16. (See: Forms of You)

and her gates have been burned by fire (ULT)
even the gates are completely burned (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “how our enemies destroyed its gates by fire” (See: Active or Passive)

and we will no longer be in disgrace (ULT)
If we do that, we will no longer feel disgraced (UST)

“so we will no longer be ashamed”

Translation Words - ULT

- the bad situation
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- in disgrace
- and her gates
- by fire
- Get up

Translation Words - UST

- the terrible things
- Jerusalem
- city
- feel disgraced
- even the gates
- are completely burned
- We need to do something about it
Nehemiah 2:18

the good hand of my God which was on me (ULT)
about how God had kindly helped me when I talked to
the king (UST)

God’s “good hand” represents his “favor.” Alternate translation: “my
God’s favor was upon me” (See: Metonymy)

We will rise up and we will build (ULT)
We should do it! We will start rebuilding (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “begin building” (See: Idiom)

And they strengthened their hands for the good work
(ULT)
So they started to do this good work (UST)

The phrase “strengthened their hands” means to prepare to do
something. Alternate translation: “So they prepared do this good
work” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• my God
• good
• for the good work
• the...hand of
• their hands
• the king
• on me

Translation Words - UST

• about...God had...helped
• kindly
• this good work
• about...God had...helped
• So they started to do
• the king
• me when I talked to the king

ULT
18 And I explained to them the good
hand of my God which was on me and
furthermore the words of the king that
he spoke to me. And they said, “We will
rise up and we will build.” And they
strengthened their hands for the good
work.

UST
18 Then I told them about how God had
kindly helped me when I talked to the
king, and what the king had said to me.
They replied, “We should do it! We will
start rebuilding.” So they started to do
this good work.
Nehemiah 2:19

Sanballat...Tobiah
These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 2:10. (See: How to Translate Names)
and Geshem (ULT)
and Geshem (UST)
This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

What is this thing which you are attempting? Are you rebelling against the king (ULT)
What is this work that you are doing? Are you rebelling against the king again (UST)

These rhetorical questions are used to mock Nehemiah. These can be written as statements. Alternate translation: “You are acting foolishly! You should not be rebelling against the king!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the king (ULT)
the king (UST)
This refers to Artaxerses, the king of Persia.

Translation Words - ULT

• Ammonite
• rebelling
• so they mocked
• the king
• us

Translation Words - UST

• Tobiah
• Are...rebelling...again
• they made fun
• the king
• us
And I spoke a word at them, and I said to them: “The God of Heaven, he will prosper us. And we—his servants—we will get up and we will build. And for you, there is no share, or right, or heritage in Jerusalem.”

But I replied, “The God who is in heaven will make us successful in this work. We are his servants. We are going to start rebuilding. But as for you, you have no right to decide anything about this city, because you have not participated in what has happened in this city in previous years.”

“But you have no share, legal right, or religious claim to Jerusalem”
Nehemiah 3

Nehemiah 3 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Priests
The priests worked on rebuilding the city. Normally, the priests were exempt from this type of work. Because they helped, it emphasizes that this is a holy work and something done for Yahweh. (See: priest, priesthood and holy, holiness, unholy, sacred and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Cooperation
Everyone worked on this project. Many names are mentioned to emphasize the cooperation between the different families. Each was given a section of the wall to rebuild.
Nehemiah 3:1

Then Eliashib the high priest rose up and his brothers the priests (ULT)
These are the names of the people who helped to rebuild the wall around Jerusalem. Eliashib the Supreme Priest and the other priests began (UST)

“Then Eliashib the high priest came forward with his brothers, the priests”

Eliashib (ULT)
Eliashib (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Tower of the Hundred (ULT)
the Tower of 100 Soldiers (UST)

“Tower of the 100” (See: Numbers)

the Tower of Hananel (ULT)
the Tower of Hananel (UST)

This is the name of a tower. It is likely named after a man named “Hananel.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• They...dedicated it
• and installed
• they dedicated it (2)
• and his brothers
• the high priest
• the high priest
• the priests
• the...Gate
• Sheep

Translation Words - UST

• dedicated the Sheep Gate to God
• and they set in place
• they dedicated it to God (2)
• and...other
• the Supreme Priest
• the...Priest
• the...priests
• it at...Gate
• the Sheep
Nehemiah 3:2

Zaccur son of Imri (ULT)
Zaccur, the son of Imri (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

the men of Jericho (ULT)
men from Jericho (UST)

This means that the men were from Jericho. Alternate translation: “men from Jericho” (See: Possession)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• Jericho
• at his side
• at their side

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• Jericho
• them
• them

ULT
2 And at his side the men of Jericho worked, and at their side Zaccur son of Imri worked.

UST
2 Next to them, men from Jericho built part of the wall. Next to them, Zaccur, the son of Imri, built part of the wall.
Nehemiah 3:3

Hassenaah (ULT)
Hassenaah (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

and installed its doors (ULT)
set in place...and also the doors (UST)

“installed its doors” or “put its doors in place”

its bolts, and its bars (ULT)
the bolts, and the bars for locking the gate (UST)

“its locks and bars.” These locked the gates securely.

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of...the
• and installed
• And the...Gate

Translation Words - UST

• The sons of
• set in place...and also
• Gate

ULT
3 And the sons of Hassenaah built the Fish Gate. They themselves made its beams and installed its doors, its bolts, and its bars.

UST
3 The sons of Hassenaah built the Fish Gate. They set in place the wooden beams above the gates, and also the doors, the bolts, and the bars for locking the gate.
Nehemiah 3:4

Meremoth…Uriah…Hakkoz…Meshullam…Berechiah…Meshezabel…Zadok…Baana

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

repaired Meremoth…repaired Meshullam…repaired Zadok (ULT)
Meremoth…repaired part of the wall…Meshullam…repaired part of the wall…Zadok…repaired part of the wall (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “Meremoth repaired the next section of the wall…Meshullam repaired the wall…Zadok repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of (2)
• son of (3)
• son of (4)
• son of
• at their side
• at their side (2)
• repaired
• repaired
• repaired

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• and grandson of (2)
• the son of (3)
• and grandson of (4)
• the son of
• them
• him (2)
• repaired part of the wall
• repaired part of the wall
• repaired part of the wall
Nehemiah 3:5

repaired the Tekoites (ULT)
some men from Tekoa repaired part of the wall (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “Tekoites repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

the Tekoites

These are people from the town of Tekoa. (See: How to Translate Names)

under the service of their supervisors (ULT)
the work...their supervisors (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that their supervisors had ordered them to do” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• their supervisors
• at their side
• repaired
• but their nobles

Translation Words - UST

• their supervisors
• him
• repaired part of the wall
• but the important men
Nehemiah 3:6

Joiada...Paseah and Meshullam...Besodeiah (ULT)
Joiada...Paseah, and Meshullam...Besodeiah (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

and installed its doors (ULT)
set in place...and also the doors (UST)

“installed its doors” or “put its doors in place”

its bolts, and its bars (ULT)
the bolts, and the bars for locking the gate (UST)

“its locks and bars.” These locked the gates securely.

Translation Words - ULT

• of...son
  • son...of (2)
  • And...the...Gate
  • repaired

Translation Words - UST

• son of
  • son of (2)
  • Gate
  • repaired

ULT
6 And Joiada son of Paseah and Meshullam son of Besodeiah repaired the Old Gate. They themselves made its beams and installed its doors, its bolts, and its bars.

UST
6 Joiada son of Paseah, and Meshullam son of Besodeiah, repaired the Old Gate. They set in place the wooden beams above the gate, and also the doors, the bolts, and the bars for locking the gate.
Nehemiah 3:7

Melatiah...and Jadon (ULT)
Melatiah...Jadon (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Gibeonite...the Meronothite (ULT)
from the city of Gibeon...from the town of Meronoth (UST)

Gibeonites and Meronothites are people groups. (See: How to Translate Names)

from Gibeon and Mizpah (ULT)
Gibeon and from the city of Mizpah (UST)

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Beyond the River (ULT)
the province west of the Euphrates River (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 2:7. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
- the Gibeonite
- from Gibeon
- repaired
- the governor of

Translation Words - UST
- from the city of Gibeon
- Gibeon
- repaired part of the wall
- The governor of
Nehemiah 3:8

Uzziel...Harhaiah...Hananiah (ULT)
Uzziel...Harhaiah...Hananiah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

one of the goldsmiths (ULT)
They make things from gold (UST)

A goldsmith is a person who makes gold jewelry and other gold objects.

repaired (ULT)
repaired part of the wall (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “goldsmiths, repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

at his side...and...repaired Hananiah, son of the perfumers (ULT)
them...Next to...Hananiah, who makes perfumes, repaired part of the wall (UST)

Hananiah repaired the wall as well. Alternate translation: “next to him Hananiah, a maker of perfumes, repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

the perfumers (ULT)
who makes perfumes (UST)

liquid substances that people put on their body in small amounts to smell pleasant

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• Jerusalem
• at his side
• repaired
• repaired
• And

Translation Words - UST

• He is the son of
• who makes perfumes
• of Jerusalem
• them
• repaired part of the wall
• repaired part of the wall
• Next to
Nehemiah 3:9

Rephaiah...Hur (ULT)
Rephaiah...Hur (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

the ruler of (ULT)
who rules (UST)

leader or chief administrator

half the district

“Half” means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• Jerusalem
• at their side
• repaired
• the ruler of

Translation Words - UST

• He is the son of
• Jerusalem
• them
• repaired part of the wall
• who rules
Nehemiah 3:10

Jedaiah...Harumaph...Hattush...Hashabneiah (ULT)
Jedaiah...Harumaph...Hattush...Hashabneiah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

repaired (ULT)
repaired part of the wall (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “Harumaph repaired the wall...Hashabneiah repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- son of
- repaired
- repaired
- his house

Translation Words - UST

- the son of
- the son of
- repaired part of the wall
- repaired part of the wall
- his house

ULT

10 And at their side Jedaiah son of Harumaph repaired right in front of his house. And at his side Hattush son of Hashabneiah repaired.

UST

10 Next to him, Jedaiah the son of Harumaph repaired part of the wall near his house. Next to him, Hattush the son of Hashabneiah repaired part of the wall.
Nehemiah 3:11

Malkijah...Harim and Hasshub...Pahath-Moab (ULT)
Both Malkijah...Harim and Hashub...Pahath-Moab (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

repaired another measured section (ULT)
repaired another section of the wall (UST)

These words refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “repaired another section of the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• repaired

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• the son of
• repaired

ULT

11 Malkijah son of Harim and Hasshub son of Pahath-Moab repaired another measured section along with the Tower of the Ovens.

UST

11 Both Malkijah the son of Harim and Hashub the son of Pahath-Moab repaired another section of the wall, and also the Tower of the Ovens.
Nehemiah 3:12

Shallum...Hallohesh (ULT)
Shallum...Hallohesh (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

repaired (ULT)
repaired part of the wall (UST)

These phrase refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “repaired another section of the wall...repaired the wall, along with his daughters” (See: Ellipsis)

Shallum son of Hallohes, ruler of (ULT)
Shallum...He is the son of Hallohes, who rules (UST)

Shallum was the ruler, not Hallohes.

ruler of (ULT)
who rules (UST)

leader or chief administrator. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:9.

half of the district of (ULT)
the other half of the district of (UST)

“Half” means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- Jerusalem
- repaired
- ruler of

Translation Words - UST

- He is the son of
- Jerusalem
- repaired part of the wall
- who rules
Nehemiah 3:13

Hanun (ULT)  
Hanun (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

and the inhabitants of Zanoah (ULT)  
and some people from the city of Zanoah (UST)

“the people from Zanoah”

Zanoah (ULT)  
the city of Zanoah (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

the...Gate (ULT)  
Gate (UST)

“the Gate of the Valley” or “the Gate that Leads to the Valley.” Try to translate this expression as a name, not just as a description.

and installed its doors (ULT)  
and set in place the doors (UST)

“installed its doors” or “put its doors in place”

its bolts, and its bars (ULT)  
the bolts, and the bars for locking the gate (UST)

“its locks and bars.” These locked the gates securely.

They...rebuilt it...a thousand cubits of the wall, as far as the Dung Gate (ULT)  
built up the gate...Also...the wall for 460 meters, as far as the Dung Gate (UST)

They repaired the portion of the wall between the Valley Gate and the Dung Gate. Alternate translation: “They repaired a thousand cubits of the wall, from the Valley Gate to the Dung Gate” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

They...rebuilt it...a thousand cubits of (ULT)  
built up the gate...Also...for 460 meters (UST)

It is understood that they were repairing the wall of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “They repaired another thousand cubits of the wall beyond the Valley Gate” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

a thousand cubits of (ULT)  
Also...for 460 meters (UST)

“1,000 cubits.” This may be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “460 meters” (See: Biblical Distance and Numbers)
the Dung Gate (ULT)
the Dung Gate (UST)

Presumably, refuse was removed from the city through this gate. Try to translate this expression as a name, not just as a description.

Translation Words - ULT

• the...Gate
• the...Gate
• repaired

Translation Words - UST

• Gate
• Gate
• repaired...they repaired
Nehemiah 3:14

Malkijah...Recab (ULT)
Malchijah...Rechab (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Malkijah son of Recab, the ruler of (ULT)
Malchijah the son of Rechab, who rules (UST)

Malkijah was the ruler, not Recab.

the ruler of (ULT)
who rules (UST)

leader or chief administrator. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:9.

Beth Hakkerem (ULT)
Beth-Haccherem (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

and he installed its doors (ULT)
and set in place the doors (UST)

“He installed its doors” or “He put its doors in place”

its bolts, and its bars (ULT)
the bolts, and the bars for locking the gate (UST)

“its locks, and its bars.” These locked the gates securely.

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• And...the...Gate
• repaired
• the ruler of

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• Gate
• repaired
• who rules
Nehemiah 3:15

Shallun...Kol-Hozeh (ULT)
Shallun...Col-Hozeh (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shallun son of Kol-Hozeh, the ruler of (ULT)
Shallun the son of Col-Hozeh, who rules (UST)

Shallun was the ruler, not Kol-Hozeh.

and the wall of the Pool of Siloam (ULT)
Near the Pool of Shelah...also...the wall (UST)

This means that the wall was beside the Pool of Siloam. Alternate translation: “the wall that surrounded the Pool of Siloam” (See: Possession)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• Mizpah
• David
• And...the...Gate
• repaired
• the king
• the ruler of

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• Mizpah
• David
• Gate
• repaired...he...repaired
• the royal
• who rules

ULT
15 And Shallun son of Kol-Hozeh, the ruler of the district of Mizpah, repaired the Fountain Gate. He built it himself, and he built a cover on it, and he installed its doors, its bolts, and its bars; and the wall of the Pool of Siloam by the garden of the king, even as far as the stairs descending from the city of David.

UST
15 Shallun the son of Col-Hozeh, who rules the district of Mizpah, repaired the Fountain Gate. He built up the gate and put a roof over it, and then set in place the doors, the bolts, and the bars for locking the gate. Near the Pool of Shelah he also repaired the wall next to the royal garden, as far as the steps that went down from the City of David.
Nehemiah 3:16

Nehemiah (ULT)
Nehemiah (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Nehemiah son of Azbuk, the ruler of (ULT)
Nehemiah...He is the son of Azbuk, who rules (UST)

Nehemiah was the ruler, not Azbuk.

Nehemiah (ULT)
Nehemiah (UST)

This is a different man named Nehemiah from the person who authored this book.

the ruler of (ULT)
who rules (UST)

leader or chief administrator. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:9.

half the district of (ULT)
half of the district of (UST)

“Half” means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

Beth Zur (ULT)
Beth-Zur (UST)

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

repaired...in front of...as far as (ULT)
repaired the wall...as far as the place opposite (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “repaired the wall up to the place” (See: Ellipsis)

the valiant warriors (ULT)
the army (UST)

“warriors”

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• David
• Nehemiah
• the valiant warriors
• repaired
• the tombs of
• the ruler of
• the house of
Translation Words - UST

- He is the son of
- the City of David
- Nehemiah
- the army
- repaired the wall
- the tombs in
- who rules
- barracks
Nehemiah 3:17

Rehum...Bani; on...Hashabiah (ULT)
These men included Rehum...Bani, and next to...
Hashabiah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Keilah (ULT)
Keilah (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Levites repaired (ULT)
some descendants of Levi who helped the priests repaired parts of the wall (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: "Levites repaired the wall" (See: Ellipsis)

for his district (ULT)
on behalf of the people of his district (UST)

"representing his district" or "on behalf of his district"

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- the Levites
- repaired
- for
- the ruler of

Translation Words - UST

- the son of
- some descendants of Levi who helped the priests
- repaired parts of the wall
- He repaired a section of the wall
- and next to
- who rules
Nehemiah 3:18

after him their brothers repaired (ULT)
and some other descendants of Levi repaired the next section of the wall (UST)

These words refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “Next to him their countrymen repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

after him (ULT)
the next (UST)

“Next to him”

Binnui...Henadad (ULT)
Bavvai...Henadad (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Binnui son of Henadad, the ruler of (ULT)
Bavvai...He is the son of Henadad, who rules (UST)

Binnui was the ruler, not Henadad.

Keilah (ULT)
Keilah (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• their brothers
• son of
• repaired
• the ruler of

Translation Words - UST

• and some other descendants of Levi
• He is the son of
• repaired...section of the wall
• who rules
**Nehemiah 3:19**

*And...repaired...another measured section (ULT)*
*repaired...another section of the wall (UST)*

These words refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “repaired another section of the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

**Ezer...Jeshua (ULT)**
**Ezer...Jeshua (UST)**

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

**Mizpah (ULT)**
**the city of Mizpah (UST)**

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

**Ezer son of Jeshua, the ruler of (ULT)**
**Ezer...He is the son of Jeshua, who rules (UST)**

Ezer was the ruler, not Jeshua.

**in front of the ascent to the armory (ULT)**
**starting from the place in front of the steps which went up to the building for storing weapons (UST)**

“in front of the steps that went up to the armory”

**to the armory (ULT)**
**the building for storing weapons (UST)**

the place where weapons are kept

**Translation Words - ULT**

- son of
- Mizpah
- Jeshua
- to the armory
- at
- the ruler of

**Translation Words - UST**

- He is the son of
- the city of Mizpah
- Jeshua
- the building for storing weapons
- Next to
- who rules
Nehemiah 3:20

After him (ULT)
Next to him (UST)

“Next to him”

Baruch...Zabbai...Eliashib (ULT)
Baruch...Zabbai...Eliashib (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

furiously...another measured section (ULT)
with great enthusiasm...another section (UST)

This refers to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “repaired another section of the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• the high priest
• the high priest
• repaired
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• the Supreme Priest
• the...Priest
• repaired
• the house of
Nehemiah 3:21

Meremoth...Uriah...Hakkoz (ULT)
Meremoth...Uriah...Hakkoz (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• of...son
• son...of (2)
• repaired
• the house of
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• He is the son of
• and the grandson of (2)
• repaired
• the house of
• house

ULT

21 After him Meremoth son of Uriah son of Hakkoz repaired another measured section, from the door of Eliashib as far as the end of the house of Eliashib.

UST

21 Next to him, Meremoth repaired another section from the door of the house of Eliashib to the end of that house. He is the son of Uriah and the grandson of Hakkoz.
Nehemiah 3:22

repaired (ULT)
repaired a section of the wall (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “around Jerusalem, repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• the priests
• repaired

Translation Words - UST

• priests
• repaired a section of the wall
Nehemiah 3:23

Benjamin and Hasshub repaired...Azariah...repaired (ULT)
Benjamin and Hasshub repaired a section...Azariah...repaired (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “Benjamin and Hasshub repaired the wall...Azariah...repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

Benjamin and Hasshub...Azariah (ULT)
Benjamin and Hasshub...Azariah (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

After them (ULT)
Next to them (UST)

“Next to them”

in front of their house (ULT)
opposite their house (UST)

“in front of their own house”

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• Benjamin
• repaired
• repaired
• their house
• his house

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• and grandson of
• Benjamin
• repaired a section
• repaired
• their house
• his house
Nehemiah 3:24

Binnui...repaired (ULT)
Binnui...repaired (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “Binnui...repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

Binnui...Henadad (ULT)
Binnui...Henadad (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

After him (ULT)
Next to him (UST)

“Next to him”

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• repaired
• from the house of

Translation Words - UST

• son of
• repaired
• from the house of

ULT
24 After him Binnui son of Henadad repaired another measured section, from the house of Azariah as far as the support post and as far as the corner.

UST
24 Next to him, Binnui son of Henadad repaired another section from the house of Azariah to the bend in the wall as far as the bulwark.
Nehemiah 3:25

Palal…Uzai: from in front of…Pedaiah…Parosh

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

and the tower extending
where the watchtower is taller

“the tower that rises up”

from the upper house of the king
than the upper palace that King Solomon built

“higher palace of the leader of Israel”

adjacent to the courtyard of the guardhouse
near the courtyard where the guards live

This is the place where the guards stayed.

After him
Next to him

“Next to him”

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• the guardhouse
• adjacent to the courtyard of
• the king
• from the...house of

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• the guards live
• near the courtyard where
• than the...palace that King Solomon built
• than the...palace that King Solomon built
Nehemiah 3:26

on the Ophel (ULT)
on Ophel Hill (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

in front of the Gate of the Waters (ULT)
the place...the Water Gate (UST)

“in front of the Water Gate”

and the projecting tower (ULT)
and the tall tower (UST)

“the tall tower.” The phrase “the projecting tower” means a tall tower that juts out from the wall.

Translation Words - ULT

• the Gate of

Translation Words - UST

• Gate
Nehemiah 3:27

the Tekoites repaired another measured section (ULT)
the men from Tekoa repaired a second section (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “the Tekoites repaired another section of the wall”

the Tekoites (ULT)
the men from Tekoa (UST)

These are people from the town of Tekoa. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:5. (See: How to Translate Names)

the tower, the great projecting one (ULT)
the very tall watchtower (UST)

“the tall tower.” The phrase “the projecting tower” means a tall tower that juts out from the wall. It is likely that this phrase refers to the same tower as “the tall tower” in verse 26.

Translation Words - ULT

• repaired

Translation Words - UST

• repaired
Nehemiah 3:28

the priests repaired (ULT)
A group of priests repaired the wall...repaired the section (UST)

These words refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “priests repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

From above the Gate of the Horses (ULT)
north from the Horse Gate (UST)

The word “above” is used here because the priests' houses were likely located at a higher elevation than the Horse Gate.

in front of his house (ULT)
in front of his own house (UST)

“in front of his own house”

Translation Words - UST

A group of priests
Gate
repaired the wall...repaired the section
the Horse
his own house
Nehemiah 3:29

repaired (ULT)
repaired the section (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “repaired the section of the wall...east gate, repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

After them (ULT)
Next to them (UST)

“Next to them”

Zadok...Immer...Shemaiah...Shecaniah (ULT)
Zadok...Immer...Shemaiah...Shecaniah (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shemaiah son of Shecaniah, the keeper of the east gate (ULT)
Shemaiah the son of Shecaniah, who was the gatekeeper at the east gate (UST)

Shemaiah was the keeper of the east gate, not Shecaniah.

the keeper of the east gate (ULT)
who was the gatekeeper at the east gate (UST)

“the person who looked after the east gate” or “the person who opened and closed the east gate”

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• the...gate
• repaired
• repaired
• the keeper of
• his house

Translation Words - UST

• son of
• the son of
• gate
• repaired the section
• repaired...section
• who was the gatekeeper at
• his house
Nehemiah 3:30

repaired (ULT)
repaired (UST)

These phrases refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “priests repaired the wall...repaired the section of the wall...east gate, repaired the wall...repaired another section of the wall...repaired the wall opposite” (See: Ellipsis)

After him

“Next to him”

Hananiah...Shelemiah, and Hanun...Zalaph...
Meshullam...Berechiah (ULT)
Hananiah...Shelemiah, and Hanun...Zalaph...
Meshullam...Berechiah (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

son of...the sixth (ULT)
son of...the sixth (UST)

“son 6” or “son number 6” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

in front of his quarters (ULT)
opposite the rooms where he lived (UST)

“in front of the rooms where he stayed.” The word “his” refers to Meshullam.

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• son of (2)
• repaired
• repaired

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• son of
• the son of (2)
• repaired
• repaired the section
Nehemiah 3:31

After him

“Next to him”

Malkijah (ULT)
Malkijah (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

the goldsmiths (ULT)
who also makes things from gold (UST)

A goldsmith is a person who makes gold jewelry and other gold objects.

repaired...as far as the house of (ULT)
repaired...section...as far as the building used by (UST)

These words refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “repaired the wall to the house” (See: Ellipsis)

and the merchants (ULT)
and the merchants (UST)

“sellers” or “traders”

the upper quarters of (ULT)
the upper apartments of this building (UST)

the higher-level rooms where people stayed

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- the Gate of
- repaired
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- who also makes things from gold
- Gate
- repaired...section
- the building used by
Nehemiah 3:32

repaired (ULT)
repaired the...section of the wall (UST)

These words refer to repairing the wall. Alternate translation: “merchants repaired the wall” (See: Ellipsis)

and the Sheep Gate (ULT)
to the Sheep Gate (UST)

This is the name of an entranceway in the wall.

Translation Words - ULT

• repaired
• the Sheep

Translation Words - UST

• repaired the...section of the wall
• the Sheep

ULT
32 And between the upper chamber of the corner and the Sheep Gate the refiners and the merchants repaired.

UST
32 Some other men who make things from gold, along with some merchants, repaired the last section of the wall from the corner apartments to the Sheep Gate.
Nehemiah 4

Nehemiah 4 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Dedication

The people were so dedicated to rebuilding the walls that they worked with their weapons ready for battle right next to them. Even when they were threatened with an attack, they continued to trust in Yahweh. (See: trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

Sanballat uses a series of rhetorical questions. These are intended to show his intense anger against the Israelites. (See: Rhetorical Question)
Nehemiah 4:1

And so it was when Sanballat heard (ULT)
When Sanballat heard (UST)

Here Nehemiah uses the word “now” to signal a new part of the story.

Sanballat (ULT)
Sanballat (UST)

This is a man’s name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 2:10.
(See: How to Translate Names)

that he burned within him and he was...angry (ULT)
he became furious and...angry (UST)

Here “it” refers to Sanballat’s realization that the Jews are rebuilding the walls. This speaks of Sanballat becoming very angry as if his anger were a burning fire. Alternate translation: “he became furiously angry” or “he became very angry” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jews
• and he mocked
• the Jews

Translation Words - UST

• the Jews
• and he mocked
• the Jews
before the face of his brothers (ULT) so that his brothers...could hear (UST)

"In the presence of his kinsmen" or "In the presence of his clan"

What are the feeble Jews doing? Will they restore for themselves? Will they sacrifice? Will they finish in a day? Will they bring to life the stones from piles of dust—and these having been burned (ULT)

What do these weak Jews think they are doing? Do they think that if they restore the temple and offer sacrifices, then their gods will hear them and enable them to finish building the wall in one day? The rocks they are pulling out of the rubbish heaps are weak because the Babylonian army burned them. Do they think they can make them strong again (UST)

Sanballat poses these questions to mock the Jews. These can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "These feeble Jews can accomplish nothing. They will never restore the city for themselves. They will not offer sacrifices. They will not finish the work in a day."

(See: Rhetorical Question)

are the feeble Jews (ULT)
these weak Jews (UST)

"weak Jews"

in a day (ULT)
in one day (UST)

This speaks of not finishing something quickly by saying that it cannot be accomplished in a day. Alternate translation: "quickly" (See: Metaphor)

Will they bring to life the stones from piles of dust—and these having been burned (ULT)
The rocks they are pulling out of the rubbish heaps are weak because the Babylonian army burned them. Do they think they can make them strong again (UST)

Sanballat also poses this question to mock the Jews. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "They will not bring to life again the stones from piles of rubble that were burned." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Will they bring to life the stones from piles of dust—and these having been burned (ULT)
The rocks they are pulling out of the rubbish heaps are weak because the Babylonian army burned them. Do they think they can make them strong again (UST)

This speaks of the people rebuilding the city as if they were bring it back to life. Alternate translation: “restore the city and rebuild its walls from the useless stones that were burned and turned into rubble” (See: Metaphor)
from piles of dust—and these having been burned (ULT)
they are pulling out of the rubbish heaps are weak because the Babylonian army burned
them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “from piles of rubble that someone had burned” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- are the...Jews
- his brothers
- Samaria
- Will they sacrifice

Translation Words - UST
- these...Jews
- his brothers
- Samaria
- and offer sacrifices, then their gods will hear
Nehemiah 4:3

Tobiah (ULT)
Tobiah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 2:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

if a fox went up, then he would break through the wall of their stones (ULT)
wall...that even if a little fox climbed up on it, their stone wall would fall to the ground (UST)

Sanaballat mocks the wall and exaggerates how weak it is by saying that a fox could knock it down. Alternate translation: “That wall they are building is so weak that even if a little fox climbed up on it, their stone wall would fall to the ground” (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT
• the Ammonite

Translation Words - UST
• Tobiah
Nehemiah 4:4

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah begins to pray to God.

Hear, our God, how we are despised (ULT)
Then I prayed and said, “O our God, listen to them ridiculing us (UST)

Here the word “we” refers to the Jews. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Hear, our God, for our enemies despise us” (See: Active or Passive)

and give them up to plunder in a land of captivity (ULT)
Allow their enemies to come and capture them and force them to go to a foreign land (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “let their enemies rob them” (See: Active or Passive)

And turn back their taunts on their own heads (ULT)
Cause their insulting word to come back on themselves (UST)

The phrase “their taunts” refers to Sanballat’s and Tobiah’s insults. Here the word “heads” refers to the whole people. Alternate translation: “Turn their taunts onto themselves” or “Cause their insulting words to mock themselves” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• our God
• captivity
• their taunts
• their own heads
• And turn back

Translation Words - UST

• Then I prayed and said, “O our God
• foreign
• their insulting word
• themselves
• Cause…to come back
Nehemiah 4:5

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah continues the prayer he began in verse 4.

And do not cover over their iniquity and do not erase their sin from before your face, for they have provoked vexation in the presence of the builders (ULT)

They are guilty, and they have sinned against you. Do not take away their guilt, and do not ignore their sin! I am asking this because they are also causing others to be angry at the people who are rebuilding the wall (UST)

Nehemiah continues the prayer he began with the words “Hear, our God” in verse 4. You may show that this is a prayer by making it a direct quote. “Then I prayed, ‘Hear, our God,…they are prisoners. Do not cover…the builders to anger.’”

And do not cover over…not (ULT)
They are guilty...Do not take away their guilt...do not (UST)

This speaks of a forgiving a person's sins as if they were a object that could be physically hidden. Alternate translation: “Do not forgive” (See: Metaphor)

their iniquity and do not erase...from before your face (ULT)
They are guilty...and they have sinned against you...their guilt...and do not...their sin (UST)

This speaks of forgetting a person's sins as if they were something written that could be erased. Alternate translation: “do not forget their sins

they have provoked vexation in the presence of the builders (ULT)
they are also causing others to be angry at the people who are rebuilding the wall (UST)

“they have made the builders become angry”

Translation Words - ULT

• and do...erase
• their iniquity
• their sin
• over

Translation Words - UST

• and they have sinned...and...their sin
• They are guilty...their guilt
• ignore
• They are guilty...their guilt
Nehemiah 4:6

So we built the wall (ULT)
But we kept building the wall (UST)

“So we rebuilt the wall”

And all the wall was connected halfway (ULT)
and after some time, we finished the wall around the whole city to about half the necessary height (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “we joined the wall together and it was half its total height” (See: Active or Passive)

halfway (ULT)
to about half the necessary height (UST)

“Half” means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

Translation Words - ULT

• a heart
• the people

Translation Words - UST

• extremely hard
• Everyone
Nehemiah 4:7

it burned in them greatly (ULT)
they became extremely furious (UST)

This speaks of the people being very angry as if their anger were something that burned inside them. Alternate translation: “they became very angry” or “they became enraged” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• permanent
• and the Ashdodites
• Jerusalem
• and the Ammonites

Translation Words - UST

• to build
• and the men from the city of Ashdod
• of Jerusalem
• the men from the nation of Ammon

ULT
7 And so it was that when Sanballat, and Tobiah, and the Arabians, and the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites heard that the walls of Jerusalem were becoming permanent and the breaches were beginning to be closed up, it burned in them greatly.

UST
7 But when Sanballat, Tobiah, the men from the land of Arabia, the men from the nation of Ammon, and the men from the city of Ashdod heard that we had continued to build the wall of Jerusalem and that we were beginning to fill in the gaps in the wall, they became extremely furious.
Nehemiah 4:8

against Jerusalem (ULT)
against the people of Jerusalem (UST)

Here “Jerusalem” refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “against the people of Jerusalem” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
  • against Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST
  • against the people of Jerusalem

ULT
8 So they all conspired together to come to fight against Jerusalem and to cause confusion in it.

UST
8 All of them together made a plan to come and fight against the people of Jerusalem, and to cause confusion inside the city.
Nehemiah 4:9

and we installed a guard against them (ULT)
and we put men around the walls...to watch them...to guard the city (UST)

“put men around the wall to guard the city”

Translation Words - ULT

- our God
- and we installed
- Then we prayed
- against them
- a guard

Translation Words - UST

- our God to protect us
- and we put
- But we prayed
- to watch them
- men around the walls...to guard the city

ULT
9 Then we prayed to our God and we installed a guard against them by day and night in their faces.

UST
9 But we prayed to our God to protect us, and we put men around the walls both day and night to watch them and to guard the city from any attack.
Nehemiah 4:10

and there is much debris (ULT)
the heavy rubble...because there is so much of it (UST)

Rubble is “burned stone” or “broken rock” or “unusable stone.”

Translation Words - ULT

• Judah
• The strength of

Translation Words - UST

• the people of Judah
• strength

ULT
10 And Judah said, “The strength of the burden-bearers is failing, and there is much debris, so we are not able to build the wall.”

UST
10 Then the people of Judah started saying, “The men who are carrying away the heavy rubble have no strength left because there is so much of it, and we ourselves are not able to work on building the wall.”
Nehemiah 4:11

They will not know, and they will not see, until when we come to the midst of them (ULT)
Before the Jews see us and know we are coming, we will rush down on them (UST)

“They will not see us coming until we are beside them”

Translation Words - ULT
- our enemies
- They will...know

Translation Words - UST
- our enemies
- and know we are coming

ULT
11 Then our enemies said, “They will not know, and they will not see, until when we come to the midst of them and we kill them; and we will stop the work.”

UST
11 Then our enemies started saying, ‘Before the Jews see us and know we are coming, we will rush down on them and kill them and stop their work on the wall!”
Nehemiah 4:12

From all the places (ULT)
Wherever (UST)

This represents many directions. The word “all” is an exaggeration for represents “many.” Alternate translation: “from many directions” (See: Hyperbole)

and spoke to us ten times (ULT)
they told us ten times (UST)

Here the number 10 is used to represent “many.” Alternate translation: “spoke to us many times” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jews
• you turn
• they will be on us

Translation Words - UST

• the Jews
• you turn
• they will attack us

ULT
12 And so it was that the Jews who were living near them came and spoke to us ten times, "From all the places where you turn, they will be on us!"

UST
12 When the Jews who were living near our enemies came to the city, they told us ten times, “Wherever you turn, they will attack us!”
Nehemiah 4:13

in the lowest parts of the place (ULT)
at the places where the wall was low (UST)

“in the vulnerable areas”

I positioned the people by family (ULT)
I also put people from each family group to stand guard (UST)

This refers to several people from each family, this likely does not include the women and children. Alternate translation: “I positioned people from each family” (See: *Synecdoche*)

Translation Words - ULT

• And I positioned
• I positioned
• their spears
• the people
• their swords
• and their bows

Translation Words - UST

• So I put guards
• I also put
• spears
• people
• their swords
• or bows

ULT

13 And I positioned—in the lowest parts of the place, behind the wall, in the glazed places—I positioned the people by family with their swords, their spears, and their bows.

UST

13 So I put guards behind the wall at the places where the wall was low or where there were gaps. I also put people from each family group to stand guard with their swords, spears, or bows.
Nehemiah 4:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Do...be afraid of
- my Lord
- your brothers
- your sons
- the people
- and feared
- the rulers
- for
- the nobles
- and your homes

Translation Words - UST

- be afraid
- The Lord is
- your families
- your sons
- people
- and glorious
- other officials
- to protect
- the leaders
- and your homes

ULT
14 And I looked, and I stood up, and I said to the nobles, and to the rulers, and to the rest of the people, “Do not be afraid of their faces. Remember my Lord, great and feared! And fight for your brothers, your sons, and your daughters; your wives, and your homes.”

UST
14 Then after I inspected everything, I summoned the leaders and other officials and many of the other people, and I said to them, “Do not be afraid of our enemies! The Lord is great and glorious, so think about what he can do. And fight to protect your families, your sons and daughters, your wives, and your homes!”
Nehemiah 4:15

And so it was that when (ULT)
Now (UST)

“It happened that”

it was known to us (ULT)
we knew what they were planning to do (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “we knew about their plans” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• our enemies
• return
• it was known

Translation Words - UST

• God
• our enemies
• return
• knew what they were planning to do

ULT
15 And so it was that when our enemies heard that it was known to us, and God had frustrated their plans, all of us returned to the wall, a man to his work.

UST
15 Now our enemies heard that we knew what they were planning to do and that God had spoiled all their plans to stop our work. So we all continued working on the wall again. Each person continued doing the same work as before.
Nehemiah 4:16

my servants did work (ULT)
my servants worked on the wall (UST)

“my young men worked”

half of my servants...half of them

“Half” means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

and the leaders were behind all the house of Judah

The leaders stood guard behind all the people of Judah

“the leaders positioned themselves behind all the people”

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- with the spears
- and the armor
- the shields
- and the bows
- and the leaders
- my servants
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Judah
- with spears
- and metal armor
- shields
- bows and arrows
- The leaders
- my servants
- the people of

ULT

16 And so it was from that day, the half of my servants did work and half of them stood firm, with the spears, the shields, and the bows, and the armor; and the leaders were behind all the house of Judah.

UST

16 But after that, only half of my servants worked on the wall. The other half of them stood guard armed with spears, shields, bows and arrows, and metal armor. The leaders stood guard behind all the people of Judah.
Nehemiah 4:17

Those who were loading, with one hand did work and with one held the spear (ULT) worked with one hand doing the work and with the other hand holding a weapon (UST)

This is an exaggeration. They did not always work with only one hand, but they always had their weapon with them so that they were prepared to protect themselves and those around them. (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

• hand

Translation Words - UST

• hand...hand
Nehemiah 4:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• strapped
• his sword
• the trumpet
• to

Translation Words - UST

• strapped
• with his sword
• the trumpet if our enemies attacked
• to

ULT
18 And the builders: a man strapped his sword to his waist, and so he built. And the one who blew the trumpet was beside me.

UST
18 Each builder worked with his sword strapped to his side. There was also a man who would blow the trumpet if our enemies attacked, and he stayed at my side.
Nehemiah 4:19

And I said (ULT)
Then I said (UST)

Here “I” refers to Nehemiah.

the nobles…the officials (ULT)
the leaders…the officials (UST)

These are the leaders referred to in Nehemiah 4:16.

The work is great (ULT)
are working over...very (UST)

Here the word “great” means “large-scale” or “huge.”

Translation Words - ULT

• from his brother
• the people
• the officials
• on
• the nobles

Translation Words - UST

• from...other
• the...people
• the officials
• along
• the leaders
Nehemiah 4:20

*a sound of a trumpet (ULT)*
*the man sounding the trumpet (UST)*

This refers to someone blowing a trumpet. Alternate translation: “someone blowing a trumpet” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Our God
- a sound of
- a trumpet

Translation Words - UST

- Our God
- the man sounding
- the trumpet

ULT

20 At the place where you hear *a sound of a trumpet*, in that direction assemble to us. *Our God* will fight for us.”

UST

20 Wherever you hear *the man sounding the trumpet*, gather around us at that place. *Our God* will fight for us!”
Nehemiah 4:21

And half of them (ULT) with half of the men (UST)

Here “Half” means one part out of two equal parts. (See: Fractions)

from the rising of the dawn until the coming forth of the stars (ULT)
all day long, from the time when the light of dawn rose in the morning until the time when the stars appeared at night (UST)

This refers to the whole day, while it is light outside. Alternate translation: “from the first light of day until the very beginning of the night”

from the rising of the dawn (ULT)
from the time when the light of dawn rose in the morning (UST)

It is the point in time that the sun rises that is “dawn.” Here the sun rising is spoken of as if the “dawn” rose. Alternate translation: “the rising of the sun” or “dawn” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• with spears
  • the coming forth of

Translation Words - UST

• spears
  • the time when...appeared at night

ULT
21 So we did the work. And half of them stood firm with spears from the rising of the dawn until the coming forth of the stars.

UST
21 So we continued to work with half of the men holding spears all day long, from the time when the light of dawn rose in the morning until the time when the stars appeared at night.
Nehemiah 4:22

in the midst of Jerusalem (ULT)
inside Jerusalem (UST)

“within Jerusalem”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jerusalem
• to the people
• guard
• and his servant

Translation Words - UST

• Jerusalem
• to the people
• guard
• and his helper

ULT
22 Moreover at that time I said to the people, “Let a man and his servant lodge in the midst of Jerusalem, and be for us a night guard and a day worker.”

UST
22 At that time, I also said to the people, “Each worker and his helper must stay the night inside Jerusalem. By doing that, they can guard us at night and work on the wall during the daytime.”
Nehemiah 4:23

stripped off our clothes (ULT)
took off our clothes (UST)

“took off our clothes”

Translation Words - ULT
- nor my brothers
- nor my servants

Translation Words - UST
- nor my brothers
- nor my servants

ULT
23 And neither I, nor my brothers, nor my servants, nor the men of the guard who were behind me, none of us stripped off our clothes, or a man his spear, for water.

UST
23 During that time none of us took off our clothes, not me, nor my brothers, nor my servants, nor the men that followed me who served as guards. Each of us always held our weapon, even when we went for water.
Nehemiah 5

Nehemiah 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Equality

The rich made money from the poor. The rich oppressed the poor by charging interest on loans. Because Nehemiah wanted to treat everyone fairly, he did not collect any taxes from them. This chapter also emphasizes that it was wrong to enslave a fellow Jew. (See: oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor)

Governor

Nehemiah was a governmental leader in Jerusalem, but he was not a king. Jerusalem had a great deal of independence, but it was under the authority of the Persian king. The term “governor” reflects this idea, but a different term may be used in translation.
Nehemiah 5:1

And then it happened that the outcry of the people and their wives was great against their brother Jews (ULT)
Later, many of the men and their wives strongly complained about what some of the other Jews were doing (UST)

Since they were working on the wall, the workers did not have enough time to work to buy and grow food for their families. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the people and their wives (ULT)
many of the men and their wives (UST)

This refers to the men who were working on building the wall.

the outcry of...was great (ULT)
complained...strongly (UST)

The word “outcry” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “cried out loudly” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jews
• their brother
• the people

Translation Words - UST

• the...Jews
• some of...other
• many of the men
Nehemiah 5:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• and we will stay alive
• Our sons
• grain

Translation Words - UST

• and stay alive
• children
• a lot of grain

ULT

2 And there were those who said, “Our sons and our daughters—we are many. And let us get grain and we will eat and we will stay alive.”

UST

2 Some of them said, “We have many children. So we need a lot of grain to be able to eat and stay alive.”
Nehemiah 5:3

We are mortgaging our fields and our vineyards and our houses (ULT)
It has been necessary for us to promise to give someone our fields, vineyards, and houses if we do not pay back to him the money he has loaned us (UST)

“We are having to pledge” or “We are having to give in pledge”

Translation Words - ULT

- and our vineyards
- during the famine
- grain
- and our houses

Translation Words - UST

- vineyards
- during this time when there is not much food
- grain
- and houses

ULT
3 And there were those who said, “We are mortgaging our fields and our vineyards and our houses so we can get grain during the famine.”

UST
3 Others said, “It has been necessary for us to promise to give someone our fields, vineyards, and houses if we do not pay back to him the money he has loaned us. We have done this in order to get money to buy grain during this time when there is not much food.”
Nehemiah 5:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- for the tax of
- the king
- and our vineyards

Translation Words - UST

- money
- to pay the taxes that...commanded us to pay
- the king
- and our vineyards

ULT

4 And there were those who said, “We have borrowed silver for the tax of the king on our fields and our vineyards.

UST

4 Others said, “We have needed to borrow money to pay the taxes that the king commanded us to pay on our fields and our vineyards.”
Nehemiah 5:5

And now, as the flesh of our brothers is, so is our flesh; as their sons are, so are our sons (ULT)
We are Jews just like the other Jews. Our children are just as good as their children...and now (UST)

Here the Jews are implying that they are of the same Jewish descent as the other Jews and that they of the same importance as the others. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Yet our families are Jews just like the other Jew's families, and our children are just as important to us as their children are to them” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

And there are those of our daughters who have been enslaved (ULT)
We have already sold some of our daughters to become slaves (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “We have already sold some of our daughters into slavery” (See: Active or Passive)

And there is nothing in our hand to fix it, for our fields and our vineyards belong to others (ULT)
Our fields and vineyards have been taken away from us...we have nothing to sell except our children to get money to pay back what we have borrowed (UST)

Since the mens' fields and vineyards are not in their possession, they are unable to produce the money they need to support their families. The full meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “But we are unable to change this situation because other men now own our fields and our vineyards which we need to support our lives” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

And there is nothing in our hand to fix it (ULT)
we have nothing to sell except our children to get money to pay back what we have borrowed (UST)

This is an idiom which means that they do not have the resources to do something. Alternate translation: “we are unable” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- our brothers is
- as their sons are
- so are our sons
- our sons
- as the flesh of
- so is our flesh
- in our hand
- our...and...vineyards
are the ones subjecting
as slaves
who have been enslaved

Translation Words - UST

- the other Jews
- just as good as their children
- Our children are
- some of our children
- just like
- We are Jews
- to sell except our children to get money to pay back what we have borrowed
- and vineyards
- have needed to sell
- to become slaves in order to get money to pay back what we have borrowed
- sold...to become slaves
Nehemiah 5:6

when I heard their outcry (ULT)
when I heard...that they were complaining about (UST)

The word “outcry” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “when I heard them cry out” (See: Abstract Nouns)

ULT
6 Then a great heat of anger came over me when I heard their outcry and these words.

UST
6 I was very angry when I heard these things that they were complaining about.
Nehemiah 5:7

Collateral is held, each man from his own brother (ULT) interest to your own relatives when they borrow money from you (UST)

Every Jew would have known that it is wrong under the Law to charge interest to another Jew. The full meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Each of you is charging interest to your own brother, and that is wrong under the Law” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

And I made a great assembly against them (ULT)
I also called together a large group of people as witnesses against them (UST)

This means that he brought together a large group of people and brought these charges against them. The meaning of statement this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “I held a great assembly and brought these charges against them” or “I held them on trial in front of the assembly” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- from his own brother
- my heart
- a...assembly
- and with the officials
- in myself
- against them
- the nobles
- and I contested

Translation Words - UST

- to your own relatives when they borrow money from you
- I
- a...group of people
- and officials
- about what I could do about it
- as witnesses against them
- the leaders
- I brought charges against
Nehemiah 5:8

you yourselves are selling your brothers, to be sold back to us (ULT)
you are forcing your own relatives to sell themselves to you, their fellow Jews (UST)

This means that they are selling their family members, both men and women, as slaves to their fellow Jews. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Now you are selling your own people to be slaves of your fellow Jews, so that they might later sell them back to us” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

who were sold to the nations (ULT)
have been forced to sell themselves to become slaves of people who come from other nations (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who people had sold as slaves to the nations” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jewish
• our...brothers
• your brothers
• We...bought back
• to the nations

Translation Words - UST

• Jewish
• Some of our...relatives...them
• your own relatives
• have been...buying...back
• of people who come from other nations

ULT
8 and said to them, “We ourselves, as we were able, bought back our Jewish brothers who were sold to the nations. In complete contrast, you yourselves are selling your brothers, to be sold back to us!” And they were silent and they could not find a word.

UST
8 I said to them, “Some of our Jewish relatives have been forced to sell themselves to become slaves of people who come from other nations. As much as we have been able, we have been buying them back. But now you are forcing your own relatives to sell themselves to you, their fellow Jews!” When I said that to them, they were silent. They could not answer even a single word, because they knew that what I said to them was true.
Nehemiah 5:9

Also I said

The pronoun “I” refers to Nehemiah.

the thing that you are doing (ULT)
What you are doing (UST)

“You” here refers to the Jewish nobles.

Should you not walk in the fear of our God, because of the reproach of the nations opposing us (ULT)
You certainly ought to obey God and do what is right! If you did that, our enemies who do not have an awesome respect for Yahweh would see that we are doing what is right and would not ridicule us (UST)

This is a rhetorical question that Nehemiah is using to scold the nobles. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should walk in the fear of our God to prevent the taunts of the nations that are our enemies.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Should you not walk in the fear of our God (ULT)
You certainly ought to obey God and do what is right! If you did that (UST)

This is and idiom. Here “walk” refers to a person’s behavior and the way he lives. Alternate translation: “live your life in a way that honors God” (See: Idiom)

because of the reproach of the nations opposing us (ULT)
our enemies who do not have an awesome respect for Yahweh would see that we are doing what is right and would not ridicule us (UST)

The word “taunt” means “slander” or “mockery” and it can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “the nations who are our enemies from taunting us” or “the enemy nations from mocking us” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• in the fear of
• our God
• It is...good
• opposing us
• because of the reproach of
• the nations
• Should you...walk

Translation Words - UST

• to obey...and do what is right
• God
• right
• our enemies
• would see that we are doing what is right and would not ridicule us
• who do not have an awesome respect for Yahweh
• If you did that
Nehemiah 5:10

loaned (ULT)  
have lent (UST)

borrowing or giving something to someone expecting repayment

loans

This is any money, food, or property that one person could let another person borrow in order to repay debts. The borrower would then be indebted to the lender.

Translation Words - ULT

• my brothers  
• Let us...forsake  
• silver  
• and my servants  
• and grain

Translation Words - UST

• my fellow Jews  
• But we all...stop  
• money  
• and my servants  
• and grain

ULT  
10 However, I, my brothers, and my servants loaned to them silver and grain. Let us please forsake this holding of collateral!

UST  
10 I and my fellow Jews and my servants have lent money and grain to people. But we all should stop charging interest on these loans.
Nehemiah 5:11

and the hundredth percent of (ULT)
also...the interest...when they borrowed...from you (UST)

A part of the value of the loan that the borrower was charged in interest.

you hold from them as collateral (ULT)
you charged them (UST)

“you charged them” or “you made them pay”

Translation Words - ULT
• return
• the silver
• their olive orchards
• and the purified oil
• their vineyards
• the new wine
• and the grain
• and their houses

Translation Words - UST
• You...give back...that you have taken from them. You...give back
• money
• their olive tree orchards
• and olive oil
• their vineyards
• wine
• grain
• and their houses

ULT

11 Please return to them today their fields, their vineyards, their olive orchards, and their houses and the hundredth percent of the silver and the grain, the new wine, and the purified oil that you hold from them as collateral.”

UST

11 You must give back to them their fields, their vineyards, their olive tree orchards, and their houses that you have taken from them. You must also give back to them the interest that you charged them when they borrowed money, grain, wine, and olive oil from you. You must do this today!”
Nehemiah 5:12

And they said (ULT)
The leaders replied (UST)

Here “they” refers to the Jewish leaders.

We will return it...from them (ULT)
We will return to them everything that we forced them to give to us, and...that they give us anything more (UST)

The Jewish leaders are saying they will return the money which the poorer Jews paid in interest charges.

and I made them swear (ULT)
and I forced the leaders to solemnly promise in front of them (UST)

Here the word “them” refers to the Jewish leaders.

I also called (ULT)
Then I summoned (UST)

“I” refers to Nehemiah.

Translation Words - ULT

• We will return it
• the priests
• and we will seek
• I also called
• and I made them swear

Translation Words - UST

• We will return to them everything that we forced them to give to us
• the priests
• we will...require
• Then I summoned
• and I forced the leaders to solemnly promise in front of them
Nehemiah 5:13

I shook out my garment (ULT)
I shook out the folds of my robe (UST)

“...garment and I said, “In this way may God shake from his house and work every man who does not keep this promise. So may he become shaken out and empty.” Then all the assembly said, “Amen!” and they praised Yahweh and the people did according to this word.

In this way may God shake from his house and work every man who does not keep this promise. So may he become shaken out and empty (ULT)
If any of you do not do what you have just now promised to do, I hope that God will shake you like how I am shaking out my robe. He will separate you from your homes and from everything that you own (UST)

Here Nehemiah speaks of God taking away all of a man's possessions as if God were shaking him out of his home and possessions like Nehemiah shook out his robe. Alternate translation: “So may God take away from every man who does not keep his promise all of his possessions and his home like I have taken everything out of the fold of my robe” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - UST

• God...He
• Amen! Let it be so
• Yahweh
• those people who were guilty
• the...group of people
• And they praised
• from your homes
Nehemiah 5:14

from the day that he appointed me (ULT)
appointed me...From that time (UST)

Here “I” refers to Nehemiah.

from the twentieth year until the year thirty-two of (ULT)
in his twentieth year as king...until his thirty-second year, during (UST)

“from the 20th year until the 32 year” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Artaxerxes the king (ULT)
Artaxerxes the king of Persia (UST)

“that Artaxerxes was king”

twelve years (ULT)
those twelve years (UST)

“12 years” or “during those 12 years.” Nehemiah is restating the number of years to emphasize that he did this continually for the full time he was governor. (See: Numbers)

the bread of the governor (ULT)
the tax money that we could have taken from the people because I was the governor (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “ate the food that the people provided for the governor”

Translation Words - ULT

• and my brothers
• he appointed
• Judah
• Artaxerxes
• the bread of
• the king
• their governor
• the governor

Translation Words - UST

• nor my officials
• appointed
• Judea
• Artaxerxes
• the tax money that we could have taken from the people
• the king of Persia
• the governor
• because I was the governor
Nehemiah 5:15

But the former governors (ULT)
The men...were governors (UST)

“previous governors” or “governors from the past.” Nehemiah was not the first governor of Judah.

forty silver shekels (ULT)
40 silver coins (UST)

“40 shekels” or “40 silver coins” (See: Numbers and Biblical Money)

But I myself did not do so because of the presence of the fear of God (ULT)
But I did not do that, because I had an awesome respect for God (UST)

“But because my fear of God I did not take the food” or “But I did not take the food because I feared God”

Translation Words - ULT

- the fear of
- God
- they burdened
- silver
- the people
- the people
- ruled
- the people
- over (2)
- and wine
- But...governors
- their servants

Translation Words - UST

- an awesome respect for
- God
- had burdened
- silver
- the people
- the people
- oppressed
- had burdened
- oppressed (2)
- and wine
- The...governors
- their servants
Nehemiah 5:16

I kept (ULT)
I...continued...repairing (UST)

“I” refers to Nehemiah.

we bought (ULT)
I did...take...from people who were unable to pay back what they had borrowed from me (UST)

The word “we” refers to Nehemiah and his servants.

and all my servants were assembling (ULT)
All those who worked for me joined (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I gathered all of my servants there” (See: Active or Passive)

for the work (ULT)
to work on the wall (UST)

“to work on the wall”

Translation Words - ULT

• we bought
• for
• my servants

Translation Words - UST

• I did...take...from people who were unable to pay back what they had borrowed from me
• to
• who worked for me

ULT
16 And moreover I kept to this work of the wall, and we bought no field, and all my servants were assembling there for the work.

UST
16 I also continued the work of repairing this wall, and I did not take land from people who were unable to pay back what they had borrowed from me. All those who worked for me joined me to work on the wall.
Nehemiah 5:17

a hundred and fifty men (ULT)
150 (UST)
“one hundred and fifty men” (See: Numbers)

And the Judeans and the officials, a hundred and fifty men, and those coming to us from the nations which surrounded us, were at my table (ULT)
Also, every day I was responsible to feed 150 Jewish officials, and also official visitors who came from nearby countries (UST)

Nehemiah was responsible for providing food for all of these people. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “Also, every day I was responsible to feed at our table the Jews and the officials, 150 people; and we also fed the visitors who came from other countries around us (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

were at my table (ULT)
every day I was responsible to feed (UST)

This refers to the governor’s table. It was a communal table for the community and for discussion of issues.

and the officials (ULT)
officials (UST)
government leaders

Translation Words - ULT

• And the Judeans
• and the officials
• the nations
• were at

Translation Words - UST

• Also...Jewish
• officials
• countries
• every day I was responsible to feed
Nehemiah 5:18

And that which was provided for one day: one bull (ULT)

So each day I told my servants...one ox...I gave (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Each day I told my servants to prepare” or “Each day I told my servants to serve us the meat from” (See: Active or Passive)

wine in abundance (ULT)
large new...wine (UST)

“enough wine for everyone”

Furthermore, I did not seek the bread of the governor (ULT)

But even so...so I did not accept the tax money that I could have taken from them because I was the governor (UST)

“yet I never asked for the governor’s food allowance”

Translation Words - ULT

- was heavy
- the bread of
- people
- I did...seek
- sheep
- on
- wine
- the governor

Translation Words - UST

- were burdened
- the tax money that I could have taken from them
- people
- so I did...accept
- sheep
- people
- new...wine
- because I was the governor
Nehemiah 5:19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for...the good (ULT) and reward...for (UST)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

This idiom is a request for God to reward him with good things because of the good that he has done for the people. Alternate translation: “and reward me” or “cause good to happen to me” (See: Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- my God
- for...the good
- people
- for

**Translation Words - UST**

- My God
- and reward...for
- people
- for

**ULT**

19 Remember me, my God, for all the good that I have done for this people.

**UST**

19 My God, think of me, and reward me for all that I have done for this people.
Nehemiah 6

Nehemiah 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The building of the wall is completed in this chapter.

The ULT sets the lines in 6:6-7 farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text because they are part of a long quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Miracle

Completing this city wall in only fifty-two days was considered proof that God had helped the Jews, especially given the opposition that they had experienced from the people in surrounding areas.
And so it was, that it was announced to Sanballat and Tobiah and Geshem the Arabian and the rest of our enemies that I had built the wall and there were no breach left in it, although until that time I had not installed the doors in the gates.

Sanballat, Tobiah, Geshem, and our other enemies heard a report that we had finished rebuilding the wall, and that now there were no more places where the wall was not finished. This happened before we had put the doors in the gates.

Nehemiah supervised the rebuilding of the wall and did not build it by himself. Alternate translation: “we had rebuilt the wall...we had not yet” (See: Synecdoche)

This refers to sections of the wall. Alternate translation: “any sections of the wall” or “any gaps in the city wall” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- I had...installed
- our enemies
- that time
- in the gates

Translation Words - UST

- we had put
- our...enemies
- This happened
- in the gates
Nehemiah 6:2

And...sent...to me (ULT)
So...sent a message...to me (UST)

This means that they sent a messenger with a message. Alternate translation: “sent a messenger to me” (See: Idiom)

Ono (ULT)
Ono (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• evil

Translation Words - UST

• harm
Nehemiah 6:3

I am doing a great work (ULT)
I am doing an important work (UST)

Nehemiah supervised the rebuilding of the wall. He did not build it by himself. Alternate translation: “We are doing a great work” (See: Synecdoche)

Why should the work stop while I leave it and come down to you (ULT)
I will neither stop nor delay this work just to go down to talk with you (UST)

This rhetorical question is used to challenge Sanballat’s request. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “I cannot let the work stop and come down to you” (See: Rhetorical Question)

and come down to you (ULT)
just to go down to talk with you (UST)

The word “down” is used here because the plain of Ono where they were requesting Nehemiah to come is at a lower elevation than Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT
- messengers
- to them

Translation Words - UST
- messengers
- to them
Nehemiah 6:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• and I answered

Translation Words - UST

• and each time when I replied

ULT

4 And they sent to me according to this message four times, and I answered them according to this message.

UST

4 They sent me the same message four times, and each time when I replied to them I said the same thing.
Nehemiah 6:5

And Sanballat sent his servant to me with this message the fifth time (ULT)
Then Sanballat sent one of his servants to me, bringing a fifth message. This one (UST)

Identifying this message separately means it is distinct in some way from the previous four messages and, therefore, should be noted. Alternate translation: “Sanballat sent his servant to me in the same way yet again” or “Sanballat sent his servant to me to deliver a fifth message” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

and the letter was open (ULT)
was written, but it was not sealed (UST)

The letter was an unsealed diplomatic communication. This was an insult to the recipient because the courier was free to read it and spread its contents among the people of the region.

in his hand (ULT)
He did this so that others would read the message that the servant was carrying in his hand (UST)

This means he had the letter in his possession, but he did not necessarily carry it in his hand at all times. Alternate translation: “in his possession” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• in his hand
• his servant

Translation Words - UST

• He did this so that others would read the message that the servant was carrying in his hand
• one of his servants
Nehemiah 6:6

It is reported among the nations (ULT)
Some people in the nearby countries have heard (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The rumor in the region is” (See: Active or Passive)

are plotting a revolt (ULT)
are planning to revolt against the king of Babylon (UST)

This means that they are planning to rebel against Artaxerxes, the Persian king, who was currently rulering the Jews. Alternate translation: “are planning to rebel against Artaxerxes” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• and the Jews
• among the nations
• a revolt
• a king
• so that is why

Translation Words - UST

• and the other Jews
• Some people in the nearby countries
• to revolt against the king of Babylon
• to become the king
• because

ULT
6 In it was written, “It is reported among the nations, and Geshem says: you and the Jews are plotting a revolt, so that is why you are building the wall. And you will be a king over them, according to these words.

UST
6 This is what was written in the message: “Some people in the nearby countries have heard a report that you and the other Jews are rebuilding the wall so that you can resist attacks, because you are planning to revolt against the king of Babylon. This report also says that you are planning to become the king of the Jews. Geshem says that this report is true.
Nehemiah 6:7

it will be reported to the king (ULT)
King Artaxerxes will certainly hear (UST)

“King Artaxerxes will hear”

So now come (ULT)
So I suggest that (UST)

“Therefore come meet with us”

Translation Words - ULT

• prophets
• you have appointed
• in Judah
• in Jerusalem
• There is a king
• to the king
• and we can consult
• come
• about you

Translation Words - UST

• some prophets
• you have appointed
• in Judea
• in Jerusalem
• are now the king
• King Artaxerxes
• we should meet...to talk about this matter
• I suggest that
• you, Nehemiah
Nehemiah 6:8

And I sent to him saying (ULT)
When I read that message, I sent the messenger back to Sanballat to say (UST)

Here “I” refers to Nehemiah and “him” to Sanballat.

Nothing exists like these words which you are saying (ULT)
None of these things that you are saying are true (UST)

“None of the things you have written have occurred”

because out of your heart you invented them (ULT)
I know that you are making this up in your own mind (UST)

Here the “heart” refers to the “mind,” that is, to one’s desires and thoughts. Alternate translation: “for within your mind you invented them” or “for you have made this up in your own imagination” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• out of your heart

Translation Words - UST

• in your own mind
Nehemiah 6:9

For they all were trying to frighten us (ULT)
I said that because I knew that they were trying to cause us to be afraid (UST)

Here “they” refers to Nehemiah’s enemies, Sanballat, Tobiah, Geshem, and their followers. The word “us” refers to the Jews.

Their hands will neglect the work (ULT)
The Jews will become so discouraged that they will not work on the wall any more (UST)

This is a descriptive phrase that means that they are stopping their work on the wall. Alternate translation: “The workers on the wall will stop doing the work” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

strengthen my hands (ULT)
I prayed, “O God, give me courage (UST)

Here Nehemiah requests for God to strengthen him by asking him to strengthen his “hands.” Alternate translation: “strengthen me” or “give me courage” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT
- were trying to frighten
- Their hands
- my hands
- strengthen

Translation Words - UST
- were trying to cause...to be afraid
- The Jews
- me
- I prayed, “O God, give...courage
Nehemiah 6:10

Shemaiah…Delaiah…Mehetabel (ULT)
Shemaia…him…Delaiah…Mehetabel (UST)

These are men’s names. (See: How to Translate Names)

and he was confined (ULT)
because he was ordered not to leave his house (UST)

The writer does not give the reason for him being confined, so it is best to say that he was staying at home using the most general words possible. Alternate translation: “who could not leave his house” or “whom the authorities had ordered to stay in his house” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• God
• the temple
• the temple
• the house of
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• and grandson of
• the temple
• the temple
• the temple
• in his house
• the temple

ULT

10 And I myself entered the house of Shemaiah son of Delaiah son of Mehetabel, and he was confined. And he said, “Let us agree to meet in the house of God, in the middle of the temple, and let us lock the doors of the temple, because of the ones coming to kill you. And at night they are coming to kill you.”

UST

10 Then one day I went to talk with Shemaia the son of Delaiah and grandson of Mehetabel. I went to talk with him in his house, because he was ordered not to leave his house. He said to me, “You and I must meet at the temple, then enter the very sacred place in the temple and lock the temple doors, because people are going to kill you. Yes, they will come at night to kill you.”
Nehemiah 6:11

Should a man like me run away? And who, like me, would enter into the temple to live (ULT)
I am not that kind of person! I will not run and hide in the temple to save my life (UST)

Nehemiah uses these rhetorical questions to emphasize that he will not do what Shemaiah has suggested. These questions may be written as statements. Alternate translation: “A man like me would not run away. A man like me would not go into the temple just to hide to stay alive.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• the temple

Translation Words - UST

• the temple
Nehemiah 6:12

to speak the prophecy against me (ULT)
to speak a message from God to me. I realized that (UST)

“but that he had prophesied in order to oppose me”

Translation Words - ULT

• the prophecy
• it was...God
• against me

Translation Words - UST

• a message from God
• God
• to me

ULT
12 And I was realizing, you see, it was not God who sent him to speak the prophecy against me, but Tobiah and Sanballat had hired him.

UST
12 I thought about what he had said, and I realized that God had not told Shemaiah to speak a message from God to me. I realized that Tobiah and Sanballat had paid him money to say that.
Nehemiah 6:13

and I would sin (ULT)
They wanted me to disobey God and sin by hiding in the temple (UST)

Using the temple as a place to hide was sinful. It may be helpful to make this explicit. Alternate translation: “and sin by misusing the temple”

a bad name (ULT)
ruined my reputation (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “so that they could give me a bad reputation” or “so that they could give a bad report about me” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT
- I would be afraid
- and I would sin
- bad
- they could humiliate me

Translation Words - UST
- me to become afraid
- They wanted me to disobey God and sin by hiding in the temple
- ruined
- discredited me

ULT
13 The reason he was hired was in order that I would be afraid, and I would act in that way, and I would sin, and become a bad name to them, so they could humiliate me.

UST
13 Now they paid him money to cause me to become afraid. They wanted me to disobey God and sin by hiding in the temple. If I did that, then they would have ruined my reputation and discredited me.
Nehemiah 6:14

Remember (ULT)
do not forget...do not forget (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “Remember”

Noadiah (ULT)
Noadiah (UST)

This is the name of a woman. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• trying to frighten
• the prophetess
• the prophets
• my God

Translation Words - UST

• tried to cause...to be afraid
• the female prophet
• prophets
• So I prayed, “My God”

ULT
14 Remember Tobiah and Sanballat, my God, according to these deeds of theirs. And also the prophetess Noadiah and the rest of the prophets who were trying to frighten me.

UST
14 So I prayed, “My God, do not forget what Tobiah and Sanballat have done. Also, do not forget that the female prophet Noadiah and some of the other prophets have also tried to cause me to be afraid.”
Nehemiah 6:15

And the wall was finished (ULT)
we finished rebuilding the wall. We did it all (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “We finished the wall” (See: Active or Passive)

on the twenty-fifth of Elul (ULT)
On October 2 (UST)

“day 25 of the month of Elul.” Elul is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

after fifty-two days (ULT)
in 52 days (UST)

“52 days” (See: Numbers)
Nehemiah 6:16

that they had failed completely in their own eyes (ULT)
Also, they felt very humiliated (UST)

“they thought much less of themselves” or “they lost confidence in themselves”

this work was accomplished from our God (ULT)
God had helped us to complete this work (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “it was our God who helped us complete this work” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• our God
• our enemies
• the nations
• And they knew

Translation Words - UST

• God
• our enemies
• the...countries
• because they knew...and they had not been able to stop us from completing it
Nehemiah 6:17

their letters went (ULT)
had been sending...messages...messages (UST)

The nobles sent messengers to bring these letters to Tobiah. Alternate translation: “sent many messengers with letters” (See: Metonymy)

Tobiah, and those of...came (ULT)
and Tobiah had been sending...back (UST)

Here Tobiah’s letters are personified as coming by themselves, when they were actually brought by messengers. Alternate translation: “Tobiah sent letters” or “Tobiah sent many messengers with letters” (See: Personification)

to...Tobiah (ULT)
Tobiah (UST)

See how you translated this man’s name in Nehemiah 2:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Judah
• to...Tobiah
• the...nobles of

Translation Words - UST

• the Jewish
• to
• leaders
Nehemiah 6:18

made an oath to him (ULT)

This speaks of people being loyal to Tobiah because they had pledged an oath to him as if their oath were a rope that bound their bodies. Alternate translation: “who had sworn an oath to him” or “who had made an oath and were loyal to him” (See: Metaphor)

he was the son-in-law to Shecaniah (ULT)
he had married the daughter of Shecaniah (UST)

This means that Tobiah was married to the daughter of Shecaniah. See how you translated “Shecaniah” in Nehemiah 3:29. (See: How to Translate Names)

Arah. And Jehohanan (ULT)
Arah. Furthermore, Jehohanan (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Meshullam...Berechiah (ULT)
Meshullam...Berechiah (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• made
• son of
• his son
• son of
• in Judah
• an oath

Translation Words - UST

• had said they would follow
• the son of
• the son of Tobiah
• the son of
• in Judea
• oath, swear, swearing, swear by
Nehemiah 6:19

Furthermore they were speaking praise of him to my face, and they were sending my words to him (ULT)
People often talked in my presence about all the good deeds that Tobiah had done, and then they would tell him everything that I said (UST)

“The Jewish nobles told me about Tobiah’s good deeds and then told him about my responses”

Tobiah sent letters to try to frighten me (ULT)
So Tobiah sent many letters to me to try to cause me to become afraid (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Tobiah sent messengers to bring the letters to Nehemiah. Alternate translation: “Tobiah sent letters to me” or “Tobiah sent messengers to bring letters to me” (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• to try to frighten me
• praise of him
• sending

Translation Words - UST

• to me to try to cause me to become afraid
• all the good deeds that Tobiah had done
• tell
Nehemiah 7

Nehemiah 7 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Genealogy

The people who returned from Persia were counted according to their families. Nehemiah ensured that those who lived in Jerusalem had a completely Jewish ancestry.

Different lists

This list is paralleled in Ezra 2. The lists do contain some differences in numbers. This is probably due to the timing of their counting. They were likely counted at different times.
Nehemiah 7:1

And so it was, that the wall was built (ULT)
After we had finished the wall (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When we had finished the wall” (See: Active or Passive)

and I had installed the doors (ULT)
and we had put the doors in the gates (UST)

This was done with help. Alternate translation: “I and others hung the doors” (See: Synecdoche)

and the gatekeepers and the singers and the Levites had been appointed (ULT)
we assigned to the temple guards and to the members of the sacred choir and to the other descendants of Levi the work that they were to do (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are: 1) Nehemiah appointed them. Alternate translation: “I assigned the gatekeepers and singers and Levites to their tasks” or 2) Someone else appointed them. Alternate translation: “they assigned the gatekeepers and singers and Levites to their tasks” (See: Active or Passive)

the gatekeepers (ULT)
to the temple guards (UST)

people assigned to each gate, responsible to control access to the city or temple, as well as to open and close the gates at times and for reasons set by the administrator

and the singers (ULT)
and to the members of the sacred choir (UST)

vocal musicians who led in worship, in processions, and ceremonies, producing music and chants that emphasized and enhanced the occasion

Translation Words - ULT

• and...had been appointed
• and the Levites
• the gatekeepers

Translation Words - UST

• we assigned...the work that they were to do
• and to the other descendants of Levi
• to the temple guards
Nehemiah 7:2

Hanani…and Hananiah (ULT)
Hanani…and Hananiah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

And I commanded my brother Hanani and Hananiah, overseer of (ULT)
I appointed two men…my brother Hanani and Hananiah who was the commander of…I appointed Hananiah (UST)

“I gave the order for my brother Hanani to be the manager”

overseer of the fortress (ULT)
who was the commander of the fortress in Jerusalem (UST)

“who was in charge of the fortress”

Hanani…and feared…God…more than many (ULT)
Hanani…and he had more awesome respect…for God…than most other people have (UST)

“feared God more than many other people”

Translation Words - ULT

• and feared
• And I commanded
• my brother
• God
• faithful
• Jerusalem
• regarding
• the fortress
• overseer of

Translation Words - UST

• and he had...awesome respect
• I appointed two men…I appointed
• my brother
• for God
• reliably
• Jerusalem
• to help me govern
• the fortress in Jerusalem
• who was the commander of

ULT
2 And I commanded my brother Hanani and Hananiah, overseer of the fortress, regarding Jerusalem; because he was a faithful man and feared God more than many.

UST
2 I appointed two men to help me govern Jerusalem, my brother Hanani and Hananiah who was the commander of the fortress in Jerusalem. I appointed Hananiah because he always did his work reliably, and he had more awesome respect for God than most other people have.
Nehemiah 7:3

I said to them

The word “them” refers to Hanani and Hananiah.

Do not open the gates of Jerusalem until the sun is hot. Until then, those standing guard should shut the doors and bar them (ULT)
Do not open the gates of Jerusalem until the sun is high in the sky each morning. And close the gates and put the bars across the doors each afternoon while the gatekeepers are still guarding the gates before they go home for the night (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) these actions were done by Hanani and Hananiah or 2) these actions were done by Hanani and Hananiah with the help of the gatekeepers or 3) the gatekeepers did these actions under the direction of Hanani and Hananiah.

the sun is hot (ULT)
the sun is high in the sky each morning (UST)

“the sun is high in the sky”

Until then, those standing guard should shut the doors and bar them (ULT)
And close the gates and put the bars across the doors each afternoon while the gatekeepers are still guarding the gates before they go home for the night (UST)

“Shut the doors and bar them while the gatekeepers are still on guard”

guards (ULT)
to be guards (UST)

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1

should shut the doors and bar them (ULT)
close the gates and put the bars across the doors (UST)

“close the gates and lock them”

Appoint guards from those who live in Jerusalem (ULT)
I also told them to appoint some people who lived in Jerusalem to be guards, and to assign... and to assign (UST)

“Assign guards from those people who live in Jerusalem”
in his own sector (ULT)
to be guards at certain places (UST)

“guard post” or “guard duty place”

Translation Words - ULT

- Appoint
- Jerusalem
- in Jerusalem
- the gates of
- in his own sector
- his own house

Translation Words - UST

- I also told them to appoint...and to assign...and to assign
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- the gates of
- to be guards at certain places
- their own houses
Nehemiah 7:4

and there were no houses being built (ULT)
and they had not yet built houses for themselves (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the people had not yet rebuilt the houses” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
• houses

Translation Words - UST
• houses

ULT
4 And the city was wide on both hands and great, but the people were few within her, and there were no houses being built.

UST
4 The city of Jerusalem covered a large area, but at that time not many people lived in the city, and they had not yet built houses for themselves.
Nehemiah 7:5

And my God gave into my heart (ULT)
Then God gave me the idea (UST)

Here Nehemiah's "heart" refers to his thoughts and will. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 2:12. Alternate translation: "inspired me" or "led me" (See: Metonymy)

to record a genealogy (ULT)
and to enroll them by their families in the books of the records of the families (UST)

"to list and register them"

the scroll of the genealogy of (ULT)
a book containing the records of (UST)

This was a book that no longer exists.

and I found written in it (ULT)
This is what I found written in those records (UST)

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "found that someone had written the following in it" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• my God
• my heart
• and the people
• and the officials
• the nobles

Translation Words - UST

• God
• me the idea
• and other people
• and officials
• the leaders
Nehemiah 7:6

These are sons of the province (ULT)
These are the names of the people...and to other places in Judea (UST)

“These are the descendants of this region”

who went up from the captivity of (ULT)
who returned...had captured their ancestors (UST)

“returned from” or “came back from”

who went up (ULT)
who returned (UST)

This is an idiom that refers to traveling toward Jerusalem, which was on higher ground than the surrounding area. (See: Idiom)

whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon exiled (ULT)
since the army of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon...and taken them to Babylon (UST)

“whom Nebuchadnezzar, ruler of Babylon, took away from their home country.” The army of Babylon did this under the command of Nebuchadnezzar. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• Babylon
• and to Judah
• to Jerusalem
• Nebuchadnezzar
• the exile
• the province
• the king of
• And they returned
• exiled

Translation Words - UST

• the names of the people
• Babylon
• to Judea
• to Jerusalem
• Nebuchadnezzar
• They had been living in the nation of Babylon
• and to other places in Judea
• the king of
• But they returned
• the army of...and taken them to Babylon
Nehemiah 7:7

Zerubbabel, Jeshua, Nehemiah, Azariah, Raamiah, Nahamani, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispereth, Bigvai, Nehum, Baanah (ULT)
Zerubbabel, Joshua, Nehemiah, Azariah, Raamiah, Nahamani, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispereth, Bigvai, Nehum, and Baanah (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

The number of the men of (ULT)
This is a list of the number of men from each (UST)

A census had been taken when the Israelites first returned to Jerusalem after the exile. The numbers represent how many men belonged to each family group. This sentence introduces the information in the following verses.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Mordecai
- Jeshua
- Nehemiah
- Zerubbabel
- the people of

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite
- Mordecai
- Joshua
- Nehemiah
- Zerubbabel
- clan that returned
Nehemiah 7:8

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is recounting the number of people who returned from exile. The people were grouped by families according to the name of their patriarchs. The number represents the number of men in each family. (See: Numbers)

Parosh (ULT)
Parosh (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
Nehemiah 7:9

Shephatiah (ULT)
Shephatiah (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
Nehemiah 7:10

Arah (ULT)
Arah (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
Nehemiah 7:11

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Pahath-Moab...Jeshua and Joab (ULT)
Pahath-Moab...Jeshua and Joab (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Pahath-Moab...through sons of Jeshua and Joab (ULT)
Moab, who are descendants of Jeshua and Joab (UST)

“that is, the descendants of Jeshua and Joab”

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of
• through sons of
• Jeshua

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
• who are descendants of
• Jeshua
Nehemiah 7:12

Elam (ULT)
Elam (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of
• Elam

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
• Elam

ULT
12 Sons of Elam: 1,254.

UST
12 1254 men from the clan of Elam:
Nehemiah 7:13

Zattu (ULT)
Zattu (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
Nehemiah 7:14

Zakkai (ULT)
Zaccai (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Sons of

**Translation Words - UST**

- men from the clan of
Nehemiah 7:15

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Binnui (ULT)
Binnui (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
Nehemiah 7:16

Bebai (ULT)
Bebai (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
  • Sons of

Translation Words - UST
  • men from the clan of
Nehemiah 7:17

Azgad (ULT)
Azgad (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• Sons of

Translation Words - UST
• men from the clan of

ULT
17 Sons of Azgad: 2,322.

UST
17 2322 men from the clan of Azgad;
Nehemiah 7:18

Adonikam (ULT)
Adonikam (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
- Sons of

Translation Words - UST
- men from the clan of
Nehemiah 7:19

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Bigvai

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
Nehemiah 7:20

Adin (ULT)
Adin (UST)

This is a man’s name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
- Sons of

Translation Words - UST
- men from the clan of

ULT
20 Sons of Adin: 655.

UST
20 655 men from the clan of Adin;
Nehemiah 7:21

Ater (ULT)
Ater (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Sons of Ater, through Hezekiah (ULT)
men from the clan of Ater who were descendants of Hezekiah (UST)

The writer has shortened this sentence. Alternate translation: “the descendants of Ater, who is a descendant of Hezekiah” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
Nehemiah 7:22

Hashum (ULT)
Hashum (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
  • Sons of

Translation Words - UST
  • men from the clan of

ULT
  22 Sons of Hashum: 328.

UST
  22 328 men from the clan of Hashum;
Nehemiah 7:23

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Bezai (ULT)
Bezai (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
Nehemiah 7:24

Hariph (ULT)
Hariph, who is also called Jorah (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of

ULT
24 Sons of Hariph: 112.

UST
24 112 men from the clan of Hariph, who is also called Jorah;
Nehemiah 7:25

Gibeon (ULT)
Gibeon, who is also called Gibbar (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of
• Gibeon

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
• Gibeon, who is also called Gibbar
Nehemiah 7:26

Bethlehem and Netophah (ULT)
Bethlehem and Netophah (UST)

These are the names of places in Judah. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Bethlehem

Translation Words - UST

• Bethlehem

ULT

26 Men of Bethlehem and Netophah: 188.

UST

26 Some other men also returned, whose ancestors had lived in these towns: 188 men from Bethlehem and Netophah;
Nehemiah 7:27

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Anathoth (ULT)
Anathoth (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 7:28

Beth Azmaveth (ULT)
Beth-Azmaveth (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT
28 Men of Beth Azmaveth, forty-two.

UST
28 42 men from Beth-Azmaveth;
Nehemiah 7:29

Kiriath Jearim, Kephirah, and Beeroth (ULT)
Kiriath-Jearim, Kephirah and Beeroth (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT
29 Men of Kiriath Jearim, Kephirah, and Beeroth, 743.

UST
29 743 men from Kiriath-Jearim, Kephirah and Beeroth;
Nehemiah 7:30

Ramah and Geba (ULT)
Ramah and Geba (UST)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• Ramah

Translation Words - UST
• Ramah
Nehemiah 7:31

Connecting Statement:
Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Michmas (ULT)  
Micmash (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 7:32

Bethel and Ai (ULT)
Bethel and Ai (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• and Ai

Translation Words - UST
• and Ai

ULT
32 Men of Bethel and Ai: 123.

UST
32 123 men from Bethel and Ai:
Nehemiah 7:33

Nebo (ULT)
Nebo (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See How to Translate Names)

ULT
33 Men of another Nebo: fifty-two.

UST
33 52 men from a small town called Nebo;
Nehemiah 7:34

Elam (ULT)
Elam (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of
• Elam

Translation Words - UST

• men from
• Elam

ULT
34 Sons of another Elam: 1,254.

UST
34 1254 men from a small town called Elam:
Nehemiah 7:35

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Harim (ULT)
Harim (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of

Translation Words - UST

• men from
Nehemiah 7:36

Jericho (ULT)
Jericho (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Sons of Jericho

Translation Words - UST

- men from Jericho

ULT

36 Sons of Jericho: 345.

UST

36 345 men from Jericho;
Nehemiah 7:37

Lod, Hadid, and Ono (ULT)
Lod, Hadid, and Ono (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
  • Sons of

Translation Words - UST
  • men from
Nehemiah 7:38

Senaah (ULT)
Senaah (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• Sons of

Translation Words - UST
• men from

ULT
38 Sons of Senaah: 3,930.

UST
38 3930 men from Senaah.
Nehemiah 7:39

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Jedaiah (of...Jeshua (ULT)
the clan of Jedaiah...Jeshua (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

the house of Jeshua (ULT)
who are descendants of Jeshua (UST)

The word “house” is a metonym for family. Alternate translation: “from the family of Jeshua” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• The priests
• Jeshua
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• men from
• These priests also returned
• Jeshua
• who are descendants of
Nehemiah 7:40

Immer (ULT)  
the clan of Immer (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sons of

Translation Words - UST

• men from

ULT

40 Sons of Immer: 1,052.

UST

40 1052 men from the clan of Immer;
Nehemiah 7:41

Pashhur (ULT)
the clan of Pashhur (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• Sons of

Translation Words - UST
• men from

ULT
41 Sons of Pashhur: 1,247.

UST
41 1247 men from the clan of Pashhur;
Nehemiah 7:42

Harim (ULT)
the clan of Harim (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
  • Sons of

Translation Words - UST
  • men from

ULT
42 Sons of Harim: 1,017.

UST
42 1017 men from the clan of Harim.
Nehemiah 7:43

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Jeshua through Kadmiel...Hodevah (ULT)
Jeshua. Some of them are descendants of Kadmiel...and some are descendants of Hodeva (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• to sons of
• The Levites
• Jeshua

Translation Words - UST

• men from the clan of
• some are descendants of Binnui
• These descendants of Levi also returned
• Jeshua

ULT
43 The Levites: sons of Jeshua through Kadmiel, to sons of Hodevah: seventy-four. [1]

UST
43 These descendants of Levi also returned: 74 men from the clan of Jeshua. Some of them are descendants of Kadmiel, some are descendants of Binnui, and some are descendants of Hodeva.
Nehemiah 7:44

Asaph (ULT)
Asaph (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

The singers (ULT)
members of the sacred choir also returned (UST)

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

Translation Words - ULT

- sons of
- Asaph

Translation Words - UST

- All of them are from the clan of
- Asaph

ULT
44 The singers: sons of Asaph: 148.

UST
44 148 members of the sacred choir also returned. All of them are from the clan of Asaph.
Nehemiah 7:45

Shallum…Ater…Talmon…Akkub…Hatita…Shobai (ULT)
Shallum…Ater…Talmon…Akkub…Hatita…Shobai (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

The gatekeepers (ULT)
temple gatekeepers also returned, who are from (UST)

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of (2)
• sons of (3)
• sons of (4)
• sons of
• sons of
• The gatekeepers

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of (2)
• the clan of (3)
• the clan of (4)
• the clan of
• and the clan of
• temple gatekeepers also returned, who are from
Nehemiah 7:46

**General Information:**

These verses continue the names of people whose descendants returned from the exile.

Ziha...Hasupha...Tabbaoth (ULT)
Ziha...Hasupha...Tabbaoth (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sons of
- sons of
- sons of

**Translation Words - UST**

- the clan of
- the clan of
- the clan of

ULT
46 The temple servants: sons of Ziha, sons of Hasupha, sons of Tabbaoth,

UST
46 Some temple workers also returned who are from the clan of Ziha, the clan of Hasupha, the clan of Tabbaoth,
Nehemiah 7:47

Keros...Sia...Padon (ULT)
Keros...Sia (who is also called Siaha...Padon (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Sia (ULT)
Sia (who is also called Siaha (UST)

This is the same man known by the name Siaha in Ezra 2:44.

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of (2)
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of (2)
• the clan of

ULT

47 sons of Keros, sons of Sia, sons of Padon,

UST

47 the clan of Keros, the clan of Sia (who is also called Siaha), the clan of Padon,
Nehemiah 7:48

Lebana...Hagaba...Shalmai (ULT)
Lebanah...Hagabah...Shalmai (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of
• the clan of
Nehemiah 7:49

Hanan...Giddel...Gahar (ULT)
Hanan...Giddel...Gahar (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of (2)
• sons of (3)

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of (2)
• the clan of (3)

ULT
49 sons of Hanan, sons of Giddel, sons of Gahar.

UST
49 the clan of Hanan, the clan of Giddel, the clan of Gahar,
Nehemiah 7:50

General Information:

These verses continue the names of people whose descendants returned from the exile.

Reaiah…Rezin…Nekoda (ULT)
Reaiah…Rezin…Nekoda (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of
• the clan of

ULT
50 sons of Reaiah, sons of Rezin, sons of Nekoda,

UST
50 the clan of Reaiah, the clan of Rezin, the clan of Nekoda,
Nehemiah 7:51

Gazzam…Uzza…Paseah (ULT)
Gazzam…Uzza…Paseah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of (2)
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of (2)
• the clan of

ULT
51 sons of Gazzam, sons of Uzza, sons of Paseah,

UST
51 the clan of Gazzam, the clan of Uzza, the clan of Paseah,
Nehemiah 7:52

Besai...Meunim...Nephushesim (ULT)
Besai...Meunim...Nephushesim (who is also called Nephisim (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of (2)
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of (2)
• the clan of

ULT
52 sons of Besai, sons of Meunim, sons of Nephushesim.

UST
52 the clan of Besai, the clan of Meunim, the clan of Nephushesim (who is also called Nephisim),
Nehemiah 7:53

**General Information:**

These verses continue the names of people whose descendants returned from the exile.

**Bakbuk...Hakupha...Harhur (ULT)**  
**Bakbuk...Hakupha...Harhur (UST)**

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sons of  
- sons of  
- sons of

**Translation Words - UST**

- the clan of  
- the clan of  
- the clan of

ULT  
53 sons of Bakbuk, sons of Hakupha, sons of Harhur,

UST  
53 the clan of Bakbuk, the clan of Hakupha, the clan of Harhur,
Nehemiah 7:54

Bazluth...Mehida...Harsha (ULT)
Bazlith (who is also called Bazluth...Mehida...Harsha (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of
• the clan of

ULT
54 sons of Bazluth, sons of Mehida, sons of Harsha,

UST
54 the clan of Bazlith (who is also called Bazluth), the clan of Mehida, the clan of Harsha,
Nehemiah 7:55

Barkos…Sisera…Temah (ULT)
Barkos…Sisera…Temah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• sons of (2)

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of
• the clan of (2)
Nehemiah 7:56

Neziah…Hatipha (ULT)
Neziah…Hatipha (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
  • sons of
  • sons of (2)

Translation Words - UST
  • the clan of
  • and the clan of (2)
Nehemiah 7:57

Connecting Statement:

Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

Sotai...Sophereth...Perida (ULT)
Sotai...Sophereth...Perida (who is also called Peruda (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Sophereth (ULT)
Sophereth (UST)

This is the name of a man who is called Hassophereth in Ezra 2:55.

Perida (ULT)
Perida (who is also called Peruda (UST)

This is the name of a man who is also called Peruda in Ezra 2:55.

Translation Words - ULT

- sons of
- sons of
- sons of (2)
- sons of
- Solomon
- servants of

Translation Words - UST

- Some descendants of...also returned. These were from
- the clan of
- the clan of (2)
- the clan of
- King Solomon
- the servants of

ULT

57 sons of servants of Solomon: sons of Sotai, sons of Sophereth, sons of Perida,

UST

57 Some descendants of the servants of King Solomon also returned. These were from the clan of Sotai, the clan of Sophereth, the clan of Perida (who is also called Peruda),
Nehemiah 7:58

Jaala...Darkon...Giddel (ULT)
Jaalah...Darkon...Giddel (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of
• the clan of

ULT
58 sons of Jaala, sons of Darkon, sons of Giddel,

UST
58 the clan of Jaalah, the clan of Darkon, the clan of Giddel,
Nehemiah 7:59

Shephatiah...Hattil...Pochereth Hazzebaim...Amon (ULT)
Shephatiah...Hattil...Pochereth Hazzebaim...Amon (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• sons of
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of
• the clan of
• the clan of
• and the clan of

ULT
59 sons of Shephatiah, sons of Hattil, sons of Pochereth Hazzebaim, sons of Amon.

UST
59 the clan of Shephatiah, the clan of Hattil, the clan of Pochereth Hazzebaim, and the clan of Amon.
Nehemiah 7:60

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• and sons of
• Solomon
• servants of

Translation Words - UST

• and descendants of
• Solomon
• the servants of

ULT
60 All the temple servants, and sons of servants of Solomon: 392.

UST
60 Altogether, there were 392 temple workers and descendants of the servants of Solomon who returned.
Nehemiah 7:61

Connecting Statement:
Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

the ones coming up (ULT)
returned which came (UST)

This is an idiom that refers to traveling toward Jerusalem, which was on higher ground than the surrounding area. Alternate translation: “returned” or “came back” (See: Idiom)

from Tel Melah, Tel Harsha, Kerub, Addon, and Immer (ULT)
from the towns of Tel-Melah, Tel-Harsha, Kerub, Addon (which is also called Addan), and Immer in Babylonia (UST)

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• from Israel
• their fathers
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• Israelites
• were descendants of
• were descendants of

ULT

61 And these, the ones coming up from Tel Melah, Tel Harsha, Kerub, Addon, and Immer, were not able to tell the house of their fathers and their seed, if they were from Israel.

UST

61 Another group also returned which came from the towns of Tel-Melah, Tel-Harsha, Kerub, Addon (which is also called Addan), and Immer in Babylonia. But they could not prove that they were descendants of Israelites.
Nehemiah 7:62

Delaiah...Tobiah...Nekoda (ULT)
Delaiah...Tobiah...Nekoda (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Sons of
- sons of
- sons of

Translation Words - UST

- the clan of
- the clan of
- and the clan of

ULT

62 Sons of Delaiah, sons of Tobiah, sons of Nekoda: 642.

UST

62 These 642 men were from the clan of Delaiah, the clan of Tobiah, and the clan of Nekoda.
And from the priests: sons of Habaiah, sons of Hakkoz, sons of Barzillai (who took a woman from the daughters of Barzillai the Gileadite and was called by their name).

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• sons of (2)
• their name
• the priests
• the Gileadite
• by

Translation Words - UST

• the clan of
• the clan of
• and the clan of (2)
• the family name of his wife
• priests...who were from
• from the region of Gilead
• the family name of his wife

ULT

63 And from the priests: sons of Habaiah, sons of Hakkoz, sons of Barzillai (who took a woman from the daughters of Barzillai the Gileadite and was called by their name).

UST

63 Some priests also returned who were from the clan of Hobaiah, the clan of Hakkoz, and the clan of Barzillai. Barzillai had married a woman who was a descendant of a man named Barzillai from the region of Gilead, and he had taken the family name of his wife.
Nehemiah 7:64

These ones, they sought their record among those being registered (ULT)
These priests searched the records that contained the names of the Israelite ancestors (UST)

“They sought their written genealogical records” or “They searched their written genealogical records”

These ones, they sought (ULT)
These priests searched (UST)

“These” refers to the descendants of Hobaiah, Hakkoz and Barzillai (Nehemiah 7:63).

and it was not found (ULT)
but they could not find the names of their families (UST)

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “but they could not find their records” (See: Active or Passive)

And they were desecrated from the priesthood (ULT)
They did not qualify to be priests because they could not trace their family history, so they were not allowed to have the rights and duties of priests (UST)

This can be translated in active form. The abstract noun “priesthood” can be translated as the verb “work as priests.” Alternate translation: “the governor treated them as if they were unclean and did not allow them to work as priests” (See: Active or Passive and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• the priesthood
• And they were desecrated
• they sought

Translation Words - UST

• the rights and duties of priests
• They did not qualify to be priests because they could not trace their family history, so they were...allowed
• searched
Nehemiah 7:65

until there arose a priest with Urim and Thummim (ULT)
but that they should wait until the priest in charge of the temple had begun his duties and could ask God what to do about this situation (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “until a priest with Urim and Thummim approved” (See: Active or Passive)

with Urim and Thummim (ULT)
and could ask God what to do about this situation (UST)

These were sacred stones that the high priest carried on his breastplate and used at times to determine God’s will. (See: Translate Unknowns)

Translation Words - ULT

• holies
• a priest
• the governor

Translation Words - UST

• any of the share of food taken from the sacrifices and kept for the priests
• the priest in charge of the temple
• The governor
Nehemiah 7:66

Connecting Statement:
Nehemiah is continuing to recount the number of people who returned from exile. (See: Numbers)

All the assembly together (ULT)
Altogether...people returned to Judea (UST)

“The whole group together”

42,360 (ULT)
42360 (UST)

“was 42,360 people”

Translation Words - ULT

• the assembly

Translation Words - UST

• people returned to Judea
Nehemiah 7:67

besides their male servants and their female servants (ULT)
also...male servants and female servants (UST)

“male singers and female singers”

Translation Words - ULT
• their male servants

Translation Words - UST
• male servants

ULT
67 besides their male servants and their female servants; these were seven thousand three hundred thirty and seven. And their singing men and singing women: 245.

UST
67 There were also 7337 male servants and female servants, and 245 male singers and female singers.
Nehemiah 7:68

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT


UST

68 The Israelites also brought back from Babylonia 736 horses, 245 mules,
Nehemiah 7:69

435...6,720

“four hundred and thirty-five...six thousand seven hundred and twenty.” These are numbers of animals brought back. (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• Donkeys
• Camels

Translation Words - UST

• and...donkeys
• camels

ULT


UST

69 435 camels, and 6720 donkeys.
Nehemiah 7:70

the heads of the fathers (ULT)
Some of the leaders of the ancestral clans (UST)

“the chief patriarchs” or “the leaders of the clans”

gave to the treasury (ULT)
gave into the treasury (UST)

“put into the treasury”

a thousand darics of (ULT)
more than 8 kilograms (UST)

“1,000 darics” (See: Numbers)

darics of gold (ULT)
more than 8 kilograms of gold (UST)

A daric was a small gold coin that people in the Persian Empire used. (See: Biblical Money)

fifty basins (ULT)
50 bowls to be used in the temple (UST)

“fifty basins.” These are large bowls. (See: Numbers)

530 priestly tunics (ULT)
and 530 robes for the priests (UST)

“five hundred thirty priestly garments.” These are items of clothing worn by the priests. (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- priestly
- the fathers
- the heads of
- to the treasury
- gold
- The governor

Translation Words - UST

- for the priests
- the ancestral clans
- Some of the leaders of
- into the treasury
- of gold
- I, the governor
Nehemiah 7:71

twenty thousand darics of (ULT)
153 kilograms (UST)

“20,000 darics” (See: Numbers)

2,200 minas of silver

“two thousand two hundred minas of silver.” A mina is about one half of a kilogram in weight. (See: Numbers and Biblical Weight)

Translation Words - ULT

• fatherly
• and...of silver
• And those of the...heads
• into...funds
• gold

Translation Words - UST

• the ancestral clans
• and...of silver
• Some of the leaders of...also
• into the temple treasury
• of gold

ULT

71 And those of the fatherly heads gave into the work funds twenty thousand darics of gold and 2,200 minas of silver.

UST

71 Some of the leaders of the ancestral clans also gave into the temple treasury for the work of rebuilding the temple a total of 153 kilograms of gold, and 1460 kilograms of silver.
Nehemiah 7:72

two thousand minas (ULT)
1330 kilograms (UST)

“2,000 minas” (See: Numbers)

and sixty-seven priestly garments (ULT)
and 67 robes for the priests (UST)

“67 priestly garments” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- the rest of
- priestly
- and...of silver
- the people
- gold

Translation Words - UST

- the remainder of
- the priests
- of silver
- the people
- of gold

ULT

72 That which the rest of the people gave: twenty thousand darics of gold, and two thousand minas of silver, and sixty-seven priestly garments.

UST

72 And the remainder of the people gave a total of 153 kilograms of gold, 1330 kilograms of silver, and 67 robes for the priests.
Nehemiah 7:73

and the gatekeepers (ULT)
the gatekeepers (UST)

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

and the singers (ULT)
the singers (UST)

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

and some of the people (ULT)
and many ordinary people (UST)

The implied information is that this refers to some of the Israelites who were not priests or other temple workers. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

and all Israel (ULT)
All these people were Israelites (UST)

Possible meanings are: 1) all the groups of Israelites that are listed in this verse or 2) the rest of the Israelites who did not work in the temple.

the seventh month (ULT)
the seventh month (UST)

“month 7.” This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: Ordinal Numbers and Hebrew Months)

were in their cities (ULT)
had gone to their cities and had started living in them (UST)

“lived in their own cities”

Translation Words - ULT

- and the sons of
- Israel
- Israel (2)
- the priests
- and the Levites
- the people
- and the gatekeepers
- the...month

Translation Words - UST

- all of

ULT

73 And the priests, and the Levites, and the gatekeepers, and the singers, and some of the people, and the temple servants, and all Israel lived in their cities (and it was accomplished the seventh month): and the sons of Israel were in their cities."

7:43 [1] Instead of Binnui, and of Hodevah, some modern versions have the descendants of Hodevah.

7:68 [2] The best ancient manuscripts do not include this verse.

7:70 [3] The Hebrew text has thirty priestly garments, but it is difficult to understand. Most modern versions have 530 priestly garments. However, some recommend reading thirty priestly garments and five hundred minas of silver.

UST

73 So the priests, the descendants of Levi, the gatekeepers, the singers, the temple workers, and many ordinary people started to live in the towns and cities of Judea where their ancestors had lived. All these people were Israelites. By the seventh month all of the Israelites had gone to their cities and had started living in them."
• Israelites
• the Israelites (2)
• the priests
• the descendants of Levi
• many ordinary people
• the gatekeepers
• the...month
Nehemiah 8

Nehemiah 8 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Reading of the law

During the exile, the Hebrew language was no longer spoken. Only the priests and Levites still understood it. Ezra read the book of the law to the people in Hebrew and the Levites walked among the crowd translating it into Aramaic for the people to understand. (See: priest, priesthood and law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law)

Festival of Shelters

After they heard Ezra read the law of Moses, the people obeyed it by making temporary shelters for themselves with tree branches. They did this to remember that their ancestors slept in shelters when they came out of slavery in Egypt.
Nehemiah 8:1

And all the people gathered as one man (ULT)
All the people gathered together (UST)

The word “all” is a generalization that indicates the people as a whole came together. Alternate translation: “The people gathered all together” (See: Hyperbole)

the Water Gate (ULT)
the Water Gate (UST)

This was the name of a large opening or doorway in the wall.

the scroll of the law of Moses (ULT)
the scroll of the law...Moses had written down (UST)

This would have been all or part of the first five books of the Old Testament.

Translation Words - ULT

• the scribe
• had commanded
• the law of
• the law of Moses
• Yahweh
• Israel
• Moses
• to Ezra
• the people
• Gate

Translation Words - UST

• the scribe
• had given
• the law
• the law...Moses had written down
• Yahweh
• to the people of Israel for them to obey its rules and commands
• Moses had written down
• Ezra
• the people
• Gate
Nehemiah 8:2

on the first day of the seventh month (ULT)
on the first day of the seventh month of that year (UST)

This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day of the seventh month is near the middle of September on Western calendars. Alternate translation: “On day 1 of month 7” (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

And...brought...the law (ULT)
brought out...did this...the law (UST)

“brought The Book of the Law”

and all who could understand, to hear (ULT)
and anyone else who could understand what he read (UST)

This would include children who were old enough to understand what was being read.

Translation Words - ULT

• the law
• the priest
• Ezra
• the assembly
• who could understand

Translation Words - UST

• the law
• the priest, who served God by offering sacrifices in the temple
• Ezra...He
• all the people
• who could understand
Nehemiah 8:3

facing the open area (ULT) in the plaza (UST)

“He turned towards the open area”

And he read (ULT) So he read aloud...He read (UST)

Here “it” refers to the Book of the law of Moses.

Translation Words - ULT

• the law
• the people
• Gate
• and ones with understanding

Translation Words - UST

• the laws
• the people...the people
• Water
• and anyone who was able to understand what he read

ULT
3 And he read, himself facing the open area which faces the Water Gate, from the light until the middle of the day, before the men and the women, and ones with understanding, and the ears of all the people were toward the scroll of the law.

UST
3 So he read aloud from the book in the plaza which was near the Water Gate from the time of the sunrise until the middle of the day. He read it in front of all the people, both men and women and anyone who was able to understand what he read. And all the people listened carefully to the laws that were written on the scroll.
Nehemiah 8:4

Mattithiah...and Shema, and Anaiah, and Uriah, and Hilkiah, and Maaseiah...Pedaiah, and Mishael, and Malkijah, and Hashum, and Hashbaddanah, Zechariah, Meshullam (ULT)
Mattithia...Mattithiah, Shema, Anaiah, Uriah, Hilkiah, and Maaseiah...Pedaiah, Mishael, Malkijah, Hashum, Hashbaddanah, Zechariah, and Meshullam (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the scribe
- Ezra
- on
- at

Translation Words - UST

- the scribe
- Ezra
- on top of
- At

ULT

4 And Ezra the scribe stood on a tower of wood which they had made for the occasion. And Mattithiah stood beside him, and Shema, and Anaiah, and Uriah, and Hilkiah, and Maaseiah, at his right side; and at his left Pedaiah, and Mishael, and Malkijah, and Hashum, and Hashbaddanah, Zechariah, Meshullam.

UST

4 Ezra the scribe stood on top of a high wooden platform that the people had built for this purpose. At his right side stood Mattithiah, Shema, Anaiah, Uriah, Hilkiah, and Maaseiah. At his left side stood Pedaiah, Mishael, Malkijah, Hashum, Hashbaddanah, Zechariah, and Meshullam.
Nehemiah 8:5

Then Ezra opened the scroll in the eyes of all the people (ULT)
Ezra...everyone could see him. He opened the scroll (UST)

The abstract noun “sight” can be expressed with the verb “see.” Alternate translation: “Everyone saw Ezra open the book” (See: Abstract Nouns)

The scroll (ULT)
the scroll (UST)

“The Book of the Law”

he was above all the people (ULT)
stood on the platform above all the people (UST)

“he was standing higher than the people”

and as he opened it, all the people stood up (ULT)
and as he did that all the people stood up (UST)

The people stood up out of respect for God’s word. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Ezra
• the people

Translation Words - UST

• Ezra...He
• everyone
• the people
• the people
Nehemiah 8:6

And Ezra blessed Yahweh (ULT)
Then Ezra praised Yahweh (UST)

The abstract noun “thanks” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “Ezra thanked Yahweh” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- And...blessed
- God
- Amen
- Amen
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and worshiped
- Ezra
- their hands
- people
- And they bowed their heads

Translation Words - UST

- Then...praised
- God
- Amen
- Amen
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and they worshiped
- Ezra
- their hands
- the people
- Then they...bowed down
Nehemiah 8:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- from the law
- and the Levites
- the...people
- taught
- stood up

Translation Words - UST

- of the laws of Moses
- and the descendants of Levi
- to the people
- explained the meaning
- there

ULT
7 And Jeshua, and Bani, and Sherebiah, Jamin, Akkub, Shabbethai, Hodiah, Maaseiah, Kelita, Azariah, Jozabad, Hanan, Pelaiah, and the Levites taught the people from the law, and the people stood up. [1]

UST
7 Then Jeshua, Bani, Sherebiah, Jamin, Akkub, Shabbethai, Hodiah, Maaseiah, Kelita, Azariah, Jozabad, Hanan, Pelaiah, and the descendants of Levi explained the meaning of the laws of Moses to the people who were standing there.
Nehemiah 8:8

And they read the scroll (ULT)
They read...from the scroll (UST)

The word “They” here refers to the Levites.

distinctly, to make it intelligible, and the assembly understood (ULT)
clearly...and they explained what it meant, so that the people understood what Ezra and the others were reading (UST)

The abstract nouns “interpretation” and “meaning” can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: “clearly interpreting and explaining it” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• of the law of
• intelligible
• And they read

Translation Words - UST

• God
• of the law of
• what it meant
• They read
Nehemiah 8:9

For all the people wept (ULT)
all the people began to cry from sadness...So (UST)

This is a generalization that indicates there was great weeping among the people. Alternate translation: “For the people wept greatly” (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- holy
- your God
- the law
- to Yahweh
- the priest
- and the Levites
- and Ezra
- Nehemiah
- who were helping...understand
- the people
- the people
- Do...mourn
- the governor

Translation Words - UST

- and scribe
- a holy day, set apart
- your God
- the law
- to worship Yahweh
- the priest
- and the descendants of Levi
- Ezra
- Nehemiah
- who were explaining the meaning
- to the people
- the people
- mourn
- the governor

ULT
9 And Nehemiah himself, the governor, and Ezra the priest scribe, and the Levites who were helping the people understand said to all the people: “This day, it is holy to Yahweh your God. Do not mourn and do not weep.” For all the people wept as they heard the words of the law.

UST
9 Then all the people began to cry from sadness when they heard what the law said. So Nehemiah (who was the governor), Ezra the priest and scribe, and the descendants of Levi who were explaining the meaning to the people, said to all the people, “Today is a holy day, set apart to worship Yahweh your God. Do not mourn or cry!”
Nehemiah 8:10

eat the fat and drink the sweet (ULT)
eat some good food, and drink something sweet (UST)

The implied information is that the people were told to feast on rich food and sweet drinks. Alternate translation: “eat rich food and drink something sweet” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

And do not grieve (ULT)
So do not grieve (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Do not grieve” (See: Active or Passive)

for the joy of Yahweh, it is your strength (ULT)
because the joy that Yahweh gives will strengthen you (UST)

The abstract nouns “joy” and “strength” can be expressed as verbs or adjectives. Alternate translation: “rejoicing in Yahweh will protect you” or “being joyful in Yahweh will be your strong refuge” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- to our Lord
- holy
- Yahweh
- your strength

Translation Words - UST

- to worship our Lord
- is a holy day set apart
- Yahweh gives
- strengthen you
Nehemiah 8:11

Quiet (ULT)
Hush (UST)

“Be quiet!” or “Be silent!”

Do not grieve (ULT)
and do not grieve (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Do not grieve” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• holy
• And the Levites
• the people

Translation Words - UST

• is a holy day
• The Levites also
• the people

ULT
11 And the Levites hushed all the people, saying, “Quiet! for this day is holy. Do not grieve.”

UST
11 The Levites also caused all the people to be quiet, saying “Hush, and do not grieve, because today is a holy day.”
Nehemiah 8:12

and to make great celebration (ULT)
And they were very happy (UST)

The abstract noun “joy” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “rejoice greatly” (See: Abstract Nouns)

the words which they made known to them (ULT)
the meaning of the words that Ezra had read and the others had explained to them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the words that he declared to them” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• people
• celebration
• they understood
• they made known

Translation Words - UST

• the people
• happy
• they understood
• Ezra had read and the others had explained

ULT
12 And all the people went to eat and to drink and to send shares and to make great celebration for they understood the words which they made known to them.

UST
12 So all the people went home to eat and drink and share what they had. And they were very happy, because they understood the meaning of the words that Ezra had read and the others had explained to them.
Nehemiah 8:13

On the second day (ULT)
On the next day (UST)

"On day 2" or “On the next day” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

to learn from (ULT)
to study carefully so that they would better understand (UST)

The abstract noun “insight” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “to understand” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• the scribe
• the law
• the priests
• and the Levites
• Ezra
• the fathers
• the people
• came together
• the heads of

Translation Words - UST

• the scribe
• the law that Yahweh had given to Moses
• and the priests
• and the descendants of Levi
• Ezra
• the families
• the people
• came together
• the leaders of

ULT
13 On the second day the heads of the fathers from all the people, the priests, and the Levites came together to Ezra the scribe to learn from the words of the law.

UST
13 On the next day, the leaders of the families of all the people and the priests and the descendants of Levi came together with Ezra the scribe to study carefully so that they would better understand the words of the law that Yahweh had given to Moses.
Nehemiah 8:14

were living...in shelters (ULT)
live...in shelters (UST)

These were temporary shelters that people made out of branches and leaves.

in the seventh month (ULT)
during the seventh month (UST)

“month 7.” This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: Ordinal Numbers and Hebrew Months)

Translation Words - ULT

• instructed
• the sons of
• in the law
• Yahweh
• Israel
• Moses
• by the hand of
• during the celebration

Translation Words - UST

• to command
• the...people
• of the law
• Yahweh
• Israelite
• Moses
• told
• in order to remember that their ancestors had lived in shelters when they walked in the wilderness after leaving Egypt
Nehemiah 8:15

And so they announced (ULT)
They also learned that they should...proclaim (UST)

“They should announce”

myrtle (ULT)
myrtle trees (UST)

a kind of small tree with colorful flowers (See: Translate Unknowns)

trees...leafy (ULT)
trees...shade (UST)

“leafy trees”

as it is written (ULT)
just as the scroll instructed (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Moses wrote about it” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• and in Jerusalem
• and spread
• their voice
• olive trees
• wild olive

Translation Words - UST

• in Jerusalem
• both...and
• publicly
• olive trees
• wild olive
Nehemiah 8:16

and made themselves shelters (ULT)
to make shelters for themselves...built shelters (UST)

“each built their own shelters”

the Water Gate...the Ephraim Gate (ULT)
the Water Gate...the Ephraim Gate (UST)

These are names of large openings or doorways in the wall.

and in the square of the Ephraim Gate (ULT)
and in the plaza near the Ephraim Gate (UST)

“in the open place by the Gate of Ephraim”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• the Ephraim
• the people
• the...Gate
• Gate
• and in their courtyards
• and in the courtyard of
• on
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• the temple
• Ephraim
• the people
• Gate
• the...Gate
• in their courtyards
• in the courtyards of
• on
• the temple

ULT
16 And the people went and gathered, and made themselves shelters, each man on his roof, and in their courtyards, and in the courtyard of the house of God, and in the square of the Water Gate, and in the square of the Ephraim Gate.

UST
16 So the people went out of the towns and cut branches and brought them to make shelters for themselves. They built shelters on the flat roofs of their houses, in their courtyards, in the courtyards of the temple, in the plaza near the Water Gate, and in the plaza near the Ephraim Gate.
Nehemiah 8:17

since the days of Joshua (ULT)
since the time that Joshua...lived (UST)

“From the days of Joshua”

son of Nun (ULT)
the son of Nun (UST)

“Nun” here is a man’s name. (See: How to Translate Names)

and the rejoicing was very great (ULT)
And the people had very great joy (UST)

The abstract noun “joy” can be expressed as an adjective. Alternate translation: “the people were very joyful” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• the sons of
• Israel
• Joshua
• the captivity
• the assembly of
• the rejoicing

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• the Israelite people
• the Israelite people
• Joshua...lived
• Babylon
• the Israelite people
• joy

ULT
17 And all the assembly of those who returned from the captivity made shelters and lived in the shelters. Now the sons of Israel had not done so since the days of Joshua son of Nun to that day, and the rejoicing was very great.

UST
17 All of the Israelite people who had returned from Babylon built shelters and lived in them for one week. (Now the Israelite people had not celebrated that festival like this since the time that Joshua the son of Nun lived, even until the present time.) And the people had very great joy.
Nehemiah 8:18

day by day (ULT)
Every day (UST)
This idiom means “each day.” (See: Idiom)

from the first day to the last day (ULT)
from the first day until the last day (UST)
The implied information is that it was during the entire week of the festival. Alternate translation: “from the first day to the last day of the week” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

And they made celebration (ULT)
They celebrated the festival (UST)
“They made a feast” or “They celebrated the festival”

and on the eighth day (ULT)
and on the eighth day (UST)
“on day 8” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

an assembly (ULT)
they called for all the people to come together so they could bring the festival to an end (UST)
This was a special religious gathering.

according to a decree (ULT)
as the scroll instructed (UST)
The implied information is that “the decree” was the command of Yahweh about how the Festival of Shelters was to end. Alternate translation: “as God had commanded” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the law of
- an assembly
- celebration
- according to a decree
- And...he read

Translation Words - UST

- God
- the law of
- they called for all the people to come together so they could bring the festival to an end
- the festival
- as the scroll instructed
- Ezra read aloud to the people
Nehemiah 9

Nehemiah 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting
This chapter and the next one form a single section.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prayer to God
The people prayed and thanked God for his care for them and the blessings he gave to them. They also confessed their sin of disobeying him. (See: bless, blessed, blessing and confess, confession and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Learning from their ancestor’s mistakes
This chapter teaches that the Jews learned from the mistakes of their ancestors. They became determined to worship Yahweh alone, to not intermarry with other peoples, and to worship Yahweh as the law of Moses instructed them. (See: law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law)

Recalling the great power of God
It was common to recall the great things God did for Israel. This is a reminder to Israel of God’s power. It is intended to bring the people to repentance and proper worship of Yahweh. (See: repent, repentance)
Nehemiah 9:1

And in the twenty and fourth day of the this month (ULT)
On October 31 (UST)

“the twenty-fourth day of the seventh month” This is near the middle of October on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

the sons of Israel gathered (ULT)
the Israelite people gathered together again...to show that they were sorry for their sins (UST)

“the people of Israel came together”

and in sackcloth, and with dust on them (ULT)
they wore clothes made from rough cloth, and they put dirt on their heads (UST)

This was in order to show how sorry they were for the wrong things they and their ancestors had done. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• the sons of
• Israel
• and in sackcloth
• gathered
• on them
• in fasting

Translation Words - UST

• the Israeliite people
• the Israeliite people
• they wore clothes made from rough cloth
• gathered together again...to show that they were sorry for their sins
• on their heads
• They abstained from eating food
Nehemiah 9:2

the seed of Israel (ULT)
The descendants of Israel (UST)

“The Israelites”

And...separated themselves...from all the sons of a foreigner (ULT)
separated themselves...away from all the descendants of foreigners (UST)

“no longer had anything to do with those who were not Israelites”

Then they stood, and they confessed their sins and the evil actions of their fathers (ULT)
They stood there and confessed their own sins and the wicked things their ancestors had done (UST)

“They admitted the wrong things that they had done and also the wrong things their forefathers had done”

Translation Words - ULT

• their sins
• the sons of
• and the evil actions of
• and they confessed
• And...separated themselves
• Israel
• their fathers
• the seed of
• their sins
• a foreigner

Translation Words - UST

• their own sins
• the descendants of
• and the wicked things
• and confessed
• separated themselves
• Israel
• their ancestors had done
• The descendants of
• their own sins
• foreigners
Nehemiah 9:3

And they stood up (ULT)
They stood (UST)

All the Israelites stood up

they confessed (ULT)
they confessed their sins (UST)

“they were admitting the wrong things they had done”

and bowed down (ULT)
and bowed down and worshiped (UST)

“worshiping” or “praising”

Translation Words - ULT

- their God
- their God
- the law of
- Yahweh
- to Yahweh
- and bowed down
- in their places
- and...they read

Translation Words - UST

- their God
- their God
- the law of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and bowed down and worshiped
- in
- and listened to someone read
Nehemiah 9:4

And the Levites, Jeshua, and Bani...stood up on the ascent (ULT)
Some of the descendants of Levi stood up on the stairs, including Jeshua, Bani (UST)

Some versions translate, “Jeshua, Bani...stood on the stairs built for the Levites”

Jeshua, and Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, Bani, and Kenani (ULT)
Jeshua, Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, another man named Bani, and Kenani (UST)

men's names (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• their God
• Yahweh
• the Levites
• and they cried out
• on

Translation Words - UST

• their God
• Yahweh
• Some of the descendants of Levi...including
• And they cried out sorrowfully
• on

ULT
4 And the Levites, Jeshua, and Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, Bani, and Kenani, stood up on the ascent and they cried out with a loud voice to Yahweh their God.

UST
4 Some of the descendants of Levi stood up on the stairs, including Jeshua, Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, another man named Bani, and Kenani. And they cried out sorrowfully in a loud voice to Yahweh their God.
Nehemiah 9:5

And the Levites...said...Stand up (ULT)
Then the descendants of Levi named...said...Stand up (UST)

Here the Levites are speaking to the people of Israel.

Praise Yahweh (ULT)
and praise Yahweh...who (UST)

“bless Yahweh”

Jeshua, and Kadmiel, Bani...Sherebiah...Shebaniah (ULT)
Jeshua, Kadmiel, Bani...Sherebiah...Shebaniah (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated them in Nehemiah 9:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hashabneiah, Sherebiah, Hodiah...and Pethahiah (ULT)
Hashabneiah, Sherebiah, Hodiah...and Pethahiah (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

And may they bless the name of your glory (ULT)
Yahweh, we praise your glorious name! Your name (UST)

the Levites are speaking to Yahweh. “May the people of Judah bless your glorious name, Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

• Praise
• And may they bless
• blessing
• your God
• your glory
• Yahweh
• the name of
• and may it be exalted
• the Levites
• and praise
• above

Translation Words - UST

• and praise
• we praise
• good
• your God
• your glorious...Your
• Yahweh...who
• Yahweh...name...name
• is more important
• the descendants of Levi named
• and wonderful
• than
Nehemiah 9:6

the highest heavens, with all their host...the host of heaven worship you

A host is an army. The “host of heaven” speaks in a metaphor of the many stars as if they were an army. The stars in turn are a metaphor for the many angels. The stars worshiping Yahweh is a metaphor for the angels worshiping Yahweh. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• make...alive
• the heavens
• the heaven of
• the heavens
• heaven
• Yahweh
• prostrate themselves in worship
• is on her

Translation Words - UST

• are the one who causes...to be alive
• the heavens
• which are
• above everything
• the heavens above the earth
• Yahweh
• worships
• on it

ULT

6 You are he, Yahweh, you alone. You yourself made the heavens, the heaven of the heavens, and all their host; the earth, and all which is on her; the seas, and all which is in them. And you make them all alive, and to you the host of heaven prostrate themselves in worship.

UST

6 You are Yahweh, and no one else. You made the heavens which are above everything, and all that lives in the heavens above the earth. You made the earth and everything that is on it, and you made the seas and everything that is in them. You are the one who causes all living things to be alive, and everything that lives in the heavens above the earth worships you.
**Nehemiah 9:7**

**Connecting Statement:**

The Levites continue their prayer before all the people.

**from Ur of the Chaldees (ULT)**
**of the city of Ur-of-the-Chaldees (UST)**

“Ur, where the Chaldean people group lived”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- the God
- and you gave him
- Yahweh
- his name
- Abram
- Abraham
- the Chaldees

**Translation Words - UST**

- God
- and changed...to
- Yahweh
- his name
- Abram
- Abraham
- the-Chaldees

**ULT**

7 You are he, **Yahweh, the God** who chose **Abram**, and brought him out from **Ur of the Chaldees**, and you gave him **his name Abraham**.

**UST**

7 You are **Yahweh**! You are **God**, who chose **Abram** and brought him out of the city of **Ur-of-the-Chaldees and changed his name to Abraham.**
Nehemiah 9:8

And you found his heart was faithful before your face (ULT)
And you saw in his inner being that he was faithful to you...you (UST)

The heart, the inner being of the person, represents the person. Alternate translation: “You saw that he was completely faithful to you” (See: Synecdoche)

the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Jebusites, and the Girgashites (ULT)
the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Jebusites, and the Girgashites (UST)

people group names (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• are righteous
• his heart
• the covenant
• was faithful
• the Hittites
• the Canaanites
• the Amorites
• and the Girgashites
• and the Jebusites
• and the Perizzites

Translation Words - UST

• always do what is right
• in his inner being
• made a promise...promising
• that he was faithful
• the Hittites
• the Canaanites
• the Amorites
• and the Girgashites
• the Jebusites
• the Perizzites

ULT
8 And you found his heart was faithful before your face, and you cut with him the covenant—to give the land of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Jebusites, and the Girgashites—to give to his seed. And You have carried out your words because you are righteous.

UST
8 And you saw in his inner being that he was faithful to you. Then you made a promise to him pledged with blood, promising that you would give to him and to his descendants the land where the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Jebusites, and the Girgashites lived. And you did what you promised, because you always do what is right.
Nehemiah 9:9

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

And you saw (ULT)
You saw (UST)

Yahweh saw

and you heard their cry (ULT)
You heard them cry out to you for help (UST)

The implied information is that God was moved to action because of the Israelites' cries for help. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Sea of Reeds
- in Egypt
- our fathers
- the humiliation of
- by

Translation Words - UST

- the Red Sea
- in Egypt
- our ancestors
- how much the Egyptians mistreated
- when they were beside

ULT
9 And you saw the humiliation of our fathers in Egypt and you heard their cry by the Sea of Reeds.

UST
9 You saw how much the Egyptians mistreated our ancestors in Egypt. You heard them cry out to you for help when they were beside the Red Sea.
Nehemiah 9:10

And you gave signs and miracles against Pharaoh (ULT)
you performed miracles for Pharaoh that proved you are the true God and that caused the king...to suffer (UST)

The plagues tested Pharaoh's heart, and they became a witness against his hardness of heart. Alternate translation: “signs and wonders that testified against Pharaoh” or “signs and wonders that condemned Pharaoh” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

and against all...the people of his land (ULT)
and...the people of Egypt (UST)

“all the Egyptians”

they were arrogant against them (ULT)
the leaders of Egypt were treating our ancestors very arrogantly (UST)

“were arrogant toward the Israelites” or “mistreated God's chosen people”

And you made a name for yourself as it is this day (ULT)
As a result, you made yourself famous, and you are still famous (UST)

Here “name” represents a reputation. Alternate translation: “you made yourself famous and even now people still remember” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• signs
• and miracles
• a name
• against Pharaoh
• the people of
• they were arrogant
• against them
• his servants
• you knew

Translation Words - UST

• that proved you are the true God
• miracles...and
• famous
• for Pharaoh...the king
• the people
• the leaders of Egypt were treating...very arrogantly
• our ancestors
• his officials
• you knew
Nehemiah 9:11

Connecting Statement:
In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

And you divided the sea (ULT)
You divided the sea (UST)

God divided

you threw...into the depths, like a stone into mighty waters (ULT)
You drowned...under the waters, and they sank as a stone sinks in deep water (UST)

In this simile, the writer describes God throwing the Egyptians into the sea as easily as a person would throw a stone into water, and the stone would disappear under the water completely. (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• mighty
• and...their pursuers

Translation Words - UST

• sinks
• the soldiers of the Egyptian army
Nehemiah 9:12

Connecting Statement:
In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

you guided them (ULT)
you led them...you led them (UST)

Yahweh led the Israelites.

Translation Words - ULT
- to illuminate
- fire
- they should go

Translation Words - UST
- to shine
- a fire
- they should walk
Nehemiah 9:13

you came down (ULT)
you came down (UST)

When God talks with his people, he is often described as “coming down” or “coming down from heaven.” This is a descriptive way of saying that God appeared to that person. Alternate translation: “you appeared” or “you came down from heaven” (See: Idiom and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

righteous decrees and true laws, statutes and good commandments (ULT)
many rules and instructions that are just and reliable... commands and laws that are good (UST)

Both of these double phrases describe the same thing, the law of Moses. (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

• from heaven
• and...commandments
• true
• decrees
• good
• righteous
• Mount Sinai
• statutes

Translation Words - UST

• from heaven
• and laws
• and reliable
• many rules
• that are good
• that are just
• Sinai Mountain
• commands
Nehemiah 9:14

Connecting Statement:
In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

and...commandments and statutes and a law (ULT)
and...commands and rules and laws (UST)

Each of these three words refers to the law of Moses. (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT
- and...commandments
- you taught
- your holy
- And...Sabbath
- Moses
- through the hand of
- and statutes
- your servant
- you revealed

Translation Words - UST
- and...commands
- you gave
- your...which is set apart from the other days of the week
- Sabbath day of rest
- Moses
- to...for him to tell
- and rules
- your servant
- You taught...about

ULT
14 And you revealed to them your holy Sabbath, and you taught to them commandments and statutes and a law through the hand of Moses your servant.

UST
14 You taught them about your Sabbath day of rest, which is set apart from the other days of the week, and you gave commands and rules and laws to your servant Moses for him to tell to the people.
And you gave them bread from heaven for their hunger, and you brought forth to them water from a rock for their thirst, and you said to them to go in to possess the land which you raised your hand to give to them.

ULT
15 And you gave them bread from heaven for their hunger, and you brought forth to them water from a rock for their thirst, and you said to them to go in to possess the land which you raised your hand to give to them.

UST
15 When they were hungry, you gave them bread from heaven. When they were thirsty, you gave them water from a rock. You said to them to go and take the land of Canaan, which you had promised with a vow to give to them.
Nehemiah 9:16

Connecting Statement:
In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

And they and our fathers (ULT)
But our ancestors...They (UST)

the Israelites at the time of Moses and the people of Israel after the time of Moses

and they stiffened their necks (ULT)
and stubborn (UST)

This is an idiom that means that they were stubborn. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• your commandments
• and our fathers
• were arrogant

Translation Words - UST

• what you commanded them to do
• our ancestors
• were proud
Nehemiah 9:17

and they stiffened their necks (ULT)
They became stubborn (UST)

This is an idiom that means that they were stubborn. (See: Idiom)

your marvelous things which you did among them (ULT)
all the miracles that you had performed for them (UST)

“the miracles that you had done among them”

and they appointed a leader...to return to their slavery (ULT)
and...they appointed a leader to take them back to Egypt, where they would be slaves again (UST)

The Israelites would know that this referred to their ancestors wanting to return to Egypt. Alternate translation: “they appointed a leader to take them back to Egypt where they had been slaves” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

But you are a God of pardons (ULT)
But you are a God who forgives us...You (UST)

The desire to forgive is spoken of as if it were a liquid that could fill a container. Alternate translation: “who is ready to forgive” (See: Metaphor)

abounding in steadfast love

Love is spoken of as if it were a food crop that Yahweh could share with people. Alternate translation: “loves his people very much” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• gracious
• your marvelous things
• to their slavery
• are a God of
• covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
• pardons
• and they appointed
• and compassionate
• you did...abandon them
• a leader
• in their rebellion

Translation Words - UST

• and who acts kindly
• all the miracles
• where they would be slaves again
• are a God
• covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
• who forgives us
• and...they appointed
• and mercifully toward us
• you...leave our ancestors alone in the desert
• a leader
• because they rebelled against you
Nehemiah 9:18

Connecting Statement:
In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

they made for themselves a calf out of molten metal (ULT)
they made for themselves an idol that resembled a calf (UST)
melted metal and molded it in the shape of a calf

Translation Words - ULT
• is your God
• from Egypt
• blasphemies

Translation Words - UST
• is your god
• out of Egypt
• they insulted you

ULT
18 Even when they made for themselves a calf out of molten metal and said, ‘This is your God who brought you up from Egypt,’ and committed great blasphemies.

UST
18 Indeed you did not leave them alone, even though they made for themselves an idol that resembled a calf and said about the idol, ‘This is your god, who brought you up out of Egypt.’ By doing that they insulted you greatly.
Nehemiah 9:19

even then, you...did not abandon (ULT)
But because you...always...did not (UST)

Yahweh did not abandon the Israelites.

The pillar of cloud...neither the pillar of fire (ULT)
the cloud which looked like a huge pillar...And...the fire
which looked like a huge pillar (UST)

See how you translated this in Nehemiah 9:12.

Translation Words - ULT

• in your compassion
• the multitudes
• to illuminate
• fire
• they should go

Translation Words - UST

• act mercifully
• you...leave them alone
• shined
• the fire
• to walk

ULT
19 even then, you, in your compassion, did not abandon the multitudes in the wilderness. The pillar of cloud he did not remove from above them by day, to lead them on the way, neither the pillar of fire by night to illuminate for them the way in which they should go.

UST
19 But because you always act mercifully, you did not leave them alone in the desert. During the daytime, the cloud which looked like a huge pillar above them continued to lead them in the way you wanted them to go. And during the night, the fire which looked like a huge pillar shined on the path in front of them to show them where to walk.
Nehemiah 9:20

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

And...your good Spirit...and...your manna...and...water (ULT)
your good Spirit...the manna...and...water (UST)

The writer changes the usual word order to emphasize the good things Yahweh gave his people. Your language may have another way of emphasizing these items.

to enlighten them (ULT)
to instruct them (UST)

teach

and you did not withhold your manna from their mouths (ULT)
You did not withhold the manna from them when they were hungry (UST)

This litotes can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: “you generously gave them manna” (See: Litotes)

from their mouths (ULT)
from them when they were hungry (UST)

The mouth is a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: “from them” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• and...your manna
• And...your...Spirit
• good
• to enlighten them

Translation Words - UST

• the manna
• your...Spirit
• good
• to instruct them
Nehemiah 9:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
21 Now you sustained them for forty years in the wilderness; they lacked nothing. Their clothes did not wear out and their feet did not swell.

UST
21 For forty years you took care of them in the desert. During all that time, they did not lack anything that they needed. Their clothes did not wear out, and their feet did not swell up even though they were continually walking.
Nehemiah 9:22

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

And You gave to them kingdoms (ULT)
You helped our ancestors to defeat armies of great kings (UST)

Yahweh gave the Israelites kingdoms.

And You gave to them kingdoms and peoples (ULT)
You helped our ancestors to defeat armies of great kings who ruled many people-groups (UST)

“enabled them to conquer kingdoms and peoples”

and you portioned out every corner (ULT)
By doing that, you caused our ancestors to live in even the most distant places in this land (UST)

“enabling them to possess every part of the land”

Sihon...Og (ULT)
Sihon...Og (UST)

These are the names of kings. (See: How to Translate Names)

Heshbon...Bashan (ULT)
from the city of Heshbon...in the Bashan area (UST)

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• And they took possession of
• Bashan
• and peoples
• the king of
• king of
• kingdoms

Translation Words - UST

• They occupied
• in the Bashan area
• who ruled many people-groups
• King...ruled
• King...ruled
• to defeat armies of great kings
Nehemiah 9:23

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

And you multiplied their sons (ULT)
You caused the children of our ancestors to become as numerous (UST)

Yahweh made the descendants of the Israelites at the time of Moses

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• And...their sons
• their fathers

Translation Words - UST

• the heavens
• the children of our ancestors
• their fathers

ULT
23 And you multiplied their sons like the stars of heaven, and you brought them into the land that you told their fathers to go in and possess.

UST
23 You caused the children of our ancestors to become as numerous as the stars in the heavens, and you brought them into this land, the land you told their fathers to enter and take for themselves so they might live there.
Nehemiah 9:24

And you gave them into their hands (ULT)
You enabled them to conquer...You enabled (UST)

The Canaanites are spoken of as if they were small objects that a person could place in the hand of another person. To give something into a person's hand is to give that person complete control over that thing. Alternate translation: “enabled the Israelites to have complete control over them” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons
- the Canaanites
- into their hands
- and the peoples of
- and their kings

Translation Words - UST

- Their children...our ancestors
- the descendants of Canaan
- to conquer
- and their kings and the people
- the descendants of Canaan
Nehemiah 9:25

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

And they captured (ULT)
Our ancestors captured...they took possession of (UST)

The Israelites at the time of Moses captured

and a productive land (ULT)
and...fertile land (UST)

“a fertile land”

cisterns (ULT)
where there were wells (UST)

holes in the ground where people store water

and they were satisfied (ULT)
all that they wanted (UST)

This might be a metaphor for “stopped thinking about Yahweh” or “became complacent.” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• good things
• in your...goodness
• and they luxuriated
• and olive orchards
• vineyards
• houses

Translation Words - UST

• good things
• in you for the good...things you did for them
• They delighted
• and...olive trees
• vineyards
• houses

ULT
25 And they captured the fortified cities and a productive land, and they possessed houses full of all good things, cisterns already-dug, vineyards and olive orchards, and food trees in abundance. And they ate and they were satisfied and they grew fat and they luxuriated in your great goodness.

UST
25 Our ancestors captured cities that had walls around them, and they took possession of fertile land. They took possession of houses that were already full of all kinds of good things, where there were wells that someone had already dug. They took possession of many vineyards and groves of olive trees and fruit trees. They ate all that they wanted and became fat. They delighted in you for the good and great things you did for them.
Nehemiah 9:26

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

and they threw your law behind their body (ULT)
Their rejected your law and put it behind their backs (UST)

The law is spoken of as if it were a worthless item that a person could throw away. Alternate translation: “They considered your law worthless and paid no attention to it” (See: Metaphor)

and they threw your law (ULT)
Their rejected your law and put it (UST)

The Israelites threw Yahweh's law.

Translation Words - ULT

• And...your prophets
• your law
• testified
• and they rebelled
• And they became defiant
• blasphemies

Translation Words - UST

• the prophets
• your law...it
• warned
• and rebelled
• But they disobeyed
• evil things against you
Nehemiah 9:27

And you gave them into the hand of their enemies, and they made them suffer (ULT)
So you allowed their enemies to defeat them...caused them to suffer (UST)

Here “hand” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “you allowed their enemies to defeat them and cause them to suffer” (See: Metonymy)

you sent to them saviors, and they saved them out of the hand of their enemies (ULT)
them...you sent them people to help them, and those leaders rescued them from their enemies (UST)

Here “hand” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “you sent people to stop their enemies from harming them” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- from heaven
- and because of your...mercies
- into the hand of
- out of the hand of
- their enemies
- their enemies
- their suffering
- they cried out
- saviors
- and they saved them
- and they made...suffer

Translation Words - UST

- from heaven
- and because you are...merciful
- caused them to suffer
- from
- their enemies
- their enemies
- their enemies
- they called out
- people to help them
- and those leaders rescued them
- to defeat

ULT

27 And you gave them into the hand of their enemies, and they made them suffer. And in the time of their suffering, they cried out to you, and you heard them from heaven, and because of your many mercies you sent to them saviors, and they saved them out of the hand of their enemies.

UST

27 So you allowed their enemies to defeat them. But when their enemies caused them to suffer, they called out to you. You heard them from heaven, and because you are very merciful, you sent them people to help them, and those leaders rescued them from their enemies.
Nehemiah 9:28

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

And after rest came to them, they went back to doing evil before your face (ULT)
But when there was a time of peace again, our ancestors again did evil things that you hated (UST)

Here “they” refers to the Israelites and “you” to Yahweh.

and you abandoned them to the hand of their enemies (ULT)
So you allowed their enemies to conquer them (UST)

Here “hand” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “you abandoned them and allow their enemies to defeat them” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- from heaven
- and they ruled
- because of your compassion
- evil
- to the hand of
- their enemies
- and they cried out to you
- and you rescued them
- Then they turned back
- And after rest came

Translation Words - UST

- from heaven
- and rule
- because you always act mercifully
- evil things
- to conquer them
- their enemies
- and cried out to you...to help them
- and rescued them
- But whenever they returned to you...again
- But when there was a time of peace again
Nehemiah 9:29

did not listen to your commands (ULT)
They would not listen to your commands (UST)

If your language has a word for “listen” that also means “obey,” use it here.

And against your decrees—those which a man does them and he lives—they sinned against them (ULT) and they sinned by disobeying your decrees, even though a person lives by obeying them (UST)

Yahweh himself is spoken of as if he were the decrees themselves. Alternate translation: “you even though you give life to everyone who obeys your decrees” (See: Metonymy)

And they gave the stubborn shoulder and they stiffened their neck and they did not listen (ULT)
They purposely ignored what you commanded them to do and became stubborn and refused to obey (UST)

These are images of an ox refusing to allow its owner to put a yoke on its shoulders. Here they are a metaphor that represents the people being stubborn. Alternate translation: “They became stubborn” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- and he lives
- they sinned
- to your commands
- your law
- And you testified
- to turn them back
- And against your decrees
- being arrogant

Translation Words - UST

- lives
- they sinned by disobeying
- to your commands
- your laws
- You warned
- that they should return...again
- and...your decrees
- became proud and stubborn
Nehemiah 9:30

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

So you gave them into the hand of the peoples of the land (ULT)
So again you allowed the armies of the nations nearby to defeat them (UST)

Here “hand” represents power or control. See how you translated these words in Nehemiah 9:27. Alternate translation: “you allowed the neighboring peoples to defeat them” (See: Metonymy)

So you gave them (ULT)
So again you allowed (UST)

Yahweh gave

Translation Words - ULT

• your prophets
• and you testified
• with your spirit
• by the hand of
• into the hand of
• the peoples of
• with them
• And you were patient

Translation Words - UST

• your prophets
• You warned
• your Spirit
• by the messages...gave to
• to defeat them
• the armies
• with them
• You were patient
Nehemiah 9:31

you did not make an end of them (ULT)
you did not destroy them completely (UST)

“you did not destroy them”

Translation Words - ULT

• gracious
• a...God
• And in your...compassions
• and merciful
• you did...forsake them

Translation Words - UST

• very gracious
• a...God
• But because you act...mercifully
• and merciful
• you...left them alone

ULT

31 And in your many compassions you did not make an end of them, and you did not forsake them, for you are a gracious and merciful God.

UST

31 But because you act very mercifully, you did not destroy them completely, and you never left them alone. Yes, you are a very gracious and merciful God!
Nehemiah 9:32

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

**do not let all this hardship seem little to you that has come on us...until today**

It is possible to divide this into two sentences. “Do not let all this hardship seem little to you. The hardship has come upon us...until today”

**the difficulty that has happened to us (ULT)**
**our difficulties...the troubles that...have experienced.**
**We have been experiencing these troubles...we are...experiencing them (UST)**

The phrase “come on us” speaks of bad things that happen as if they are people who cause harm. Alternate translation: “harm...we have suffered” (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

- and to our prophets
- our God
- the...God
- and steadfast love
- the covenant
- and to our priests
- Assyria
- and to our fathers
- mighty
- your people
- and feared
- the difficulty
- to our princes
- to our kings
- the kings of
- keeper of

Translation Words - UST

- our prophets
- our God
- you are
- and always faithfully love us
- your promises
- our priests
- of Assyria
- our ancestors
- and mighty
• your people
• and awesome
• our difficulties...the troubles...these troubles...them
• our leaders
• our kings
• the armies of the kings
• You always fulfill
Nehemiah 9:33

that has happened to us (ULT)
that...have caused to happen to us (UST)

The phrase “come on us” speaks of bad things that happen as if they are people who cause harm. Alternate translation: “everything we have suffered” (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

• are just
• faithfully
• we have acted wickedly
• in
• happened to us

Translation Words - UST

• act justly
• faithfully
• have done evil things
• on account of
• to us

ULT 33 And you are just in everything that has happened to us, for you have dealt faithfully, but we—we have acted wickedly.

UST 33 We know that you act justly on account of everything that you have caused to happen to us, because you have treated us faithfully, even though we have done evil things.
Nehemiah 9:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• your commandments
• your law
• you warned them
• our priests
• and our fathers
• And our kings
• our princes

Translation Words - UST

• your commands
• your laws
• you gave
• our priests
• and our other ancestors
• our kings
• our leaders

ULT

34 And our kings, our princes, our priests, and our fathers—they have not done your law, nor did they pay attention to your commandments or your decrees by which you warned them.

UST

34 In the past, our kings, our leaders, our priests and our other ancestors did not obey your laws. They did not listen to your commands or the warnings that you gave them.
Nehemiah 9:35

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

and in your great goodness which you gave to them (ULT)
and they enjoyed the many good things that you gave them (UST)

“while they enjoyed the good things you gave them”

they did not serve you (ULT)
did not serve you (UST)

“they were not obedient to your law or teaching”

Translation Words - ULT

• and in your...goodness
• evil
• in their own kingdom
• they did...serve you

Translation Words - UST

• and they enjoyed the...good things
• what was evil
• when they had their own kings
• serve you

ULT
35 And they—in their own kingdom, and in your great goodness which you gave to them, and in the wide and productive land which you set before their face—
they did not serve you, and they did not turn away from their evil practices.

UST
35 Even when they had their own kings, and they enjoyed the many good things that you gave them in this large and fertile land that you gave to them, they did not serve you and they would not stop doing what was evil.
Nehemiah 9:36

Connecting Statement:
In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

and her goodness (ULT)
all the good things (UST)
“all the good things in it” or “all the good things we can get from it”

Translation Words - ULT

• and her goodness
• to our fathers
• her fruit
• in her
• are servants
• are servants

Translation Words - UST

• all the good things
• to our ancestors...them
• that grow here
• on this land
• live like slaves
• are as poor as slaves

ULT
36 Look! Today we are servants. And in the land which you gave to our fathers to eat her fruit and her goodness—look! we are servants in her!

UST
36 Look at us! Today we live like slaves here in this land that you gave to our ancestors. You gave them this land so that they could enjoy all the good things that grow here. But look at us now and see that we are as poor as slaves on this land.
Nehemiah 9:37

And her great income goes to the kings (ULT)
all the good things that grow here. Instead, the kings...
are enjoying all the good things that grow here (UST)

“We pay tribute to kings for working our own land”

they reign (ULT)
They rule (UST)

The kings rule.

Translation Words - ULT

• in our sins
• they reign
• and over our livestock
• goes to the kings
• over us

Translation Words - UST

• Because we have sinned, we cannot enjoy
• They rule
• and our cattle
• Instead, the kings...are enjoying
• over us
Nehemiah 9:38

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, the Levites continue to praise Yahweh in the presence of the people of Israel.

And in all of this (ULT)
Because of all this (UST)

because the people had disobeyed and Yahweh had punished them

on the sealed document (ULT)
and then we will seal it (UST)

The reader should understand that the men wrote their names on the document before it was sealed.

Translation Words - ULT

• and our priests
• our Levites
• our princes

Translation Words - UST

• and the names of our priests
• the names of the descendants of Levi
• the names of our leaders

ULT
38 And in all of this, we are cutting a faithful covenant, and writing on the sealed document: our princes, our Levites, and our priests.

UST
38 Because of all this, we the Israelite people are making a solemn agreement and writing it on a scroll. We will write on it the names of our leaders, the names of the descendants of Levi, and the names of our priests, and then we will seal it."
Nehemiah 10

Nehemiah 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter concludes the passage beginning in chapter 9.

Special concepts in this chapter

The vow

By signing this document, the people vowed or agreed to obey God, not to buy things on the Sabbath and to pay their temple tax. (See: vow and Sabbath and temple)
Nehemiah 10:1

Connecting Statement:

Here begins a list of the people whose names were on the sealed document.

**And on the sealed documents were Nehemiah, the governor, son of Hakaliah and Zedekiah (ULT)**

**These are the names of the people who signed the agreement: I, Nehemiah the governor, the son of Hakaliah; and also Zedekiah (UST)**

The names of these people were written on the documents. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “On the sealed documents were the names of Nehemiah...Zedekiah” or “On the sealed documents were the names of the following people: Nehemiah...Zedekiah” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**The sealed documents (ULT)**

**These are the names of the people who signed the agreement (UST)**

The documents were sealed after the names had been signed on the documents.

**were Nehemiah (ULT)**

**I, Nehemiah (UST)**

Some people believe that Nehemiah wrote this book and is speaking of himself as if he were someone else because this is an official list. (See: Pronouns)

**Hakaliah (ULT)**

**Hakaliah (UST)**

This is a man’s name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 1:1. (See: How to Translate Names)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- son of
- were Nehemiah
- the governor

**Translation Words - UST**

- the son of
- I, Nehemiah
- the governor
Nehemiah 10:2

Connecting Statement:

The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents (verse 1) continues.

Seraiah...Jeremiah (ULT)
The priests who signed the agreement included:
Seraiah...Jeremiah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Azariah (ULT)
Azariah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:23. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:3

Connecting Statement:
The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents (verse 1) continues.

Pashhur, Amariah (ULT)
Pashhur, Amariah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Malkijah (ULT)
Malkijah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:11. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:4

Connecting Statement:

The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Hattush (ULT)
Hattush (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Nehemiah 3:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shebaniah (ULT)
Shebaniah (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Nehemiah 9:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Malluk

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:5

Connecting Statement:
The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Harim (ULT)
Harim (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:11. (See: How to Translate Names)

Meremoth (ULT)
Meremoth (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Obadiah (ULT)
Obadiah (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:6

Connecting Statement:

The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Daniel, Ginnethon (ULT)
Daniel, Ginnethon (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Baruch (ULT)
Baruch (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:20. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:7

Meshullam (ULT)
Meshullam (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated it in Nehemiah 9:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Abijah, Mijamin (ULT)
Abijah, Mijamin (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Maaziah, Bilgai (ULT)
Maaziah, Bilgai (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shemaiah (ULT)
and Shemaiah (UST)

This is a man’s name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:29. (See: How to Translate Names)

These were the priests (ULT)
Those are the names of the priests who signed the agreement (UST)

This refers to the previous list of men who signed the document. Alternate translation: “These were the names of the priests who signed the document” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• were the priests

Translation Words - UST

• the names of the priests who signed the agreement
Nehemiah 10:9

Connecting Statement:
The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents
Nehemiah 10:1 continues. Nehemiah begins here to list the names of the Levites who signed the sealed document.

The Levites were (ULT)
The descendants of Levi who signed the agreement included (UST)

This refers to those who put their names on the sealed documents. Alternate translation: “The Levites who put their names on the sealed documents were” (See: Ellipsis)

Jeshua…Henadad (ULT)
Jeshua…Henadad (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated them in Nehemiah 3:18-19. (See: How to Translate Names)

Azaniah (ULT)
Azaniah (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Binnui (ULT)
Binnui (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated it in Nehemiah 3:24. (See: How to Translate Names)

Kadmiel (ULT)
Kadmiel (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated it in Nehemiah 7:43. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
- son of
- from the sons of
- The Levites were

Translation Words - UST
- the son of
- from the clan of
- The descendants of Levi who signed the agreement included
Nehemiah 10:10

Shebaniah (ULT)
Shebaniah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 9:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hodiah, Kelita, Pelaiah (ULT)
Hodiah, Kelita, Pelaiah (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 8:7. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hanan (ULT)
Hanan (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:49. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• and their brothers

Translation Words - UST

• Some of their associates also signed the agreement, including
Nehemiah 10:11

Connecting Statement:

The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Rehob (ULT)
Rehob (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Mika (ULT)
Mika (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 10:11. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hashabiah (ULT)
Hashabiah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:17. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:12

Connecting Statement:

The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Zaccur (ULT)
Zaccur (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

Sherebiah (ULT)
Sherebiah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 8:7. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shebaniah (ULT)
Shebaniah (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:13

Connecting Statement:
The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Hodiah...Beninu (ULT)
Hodiah...and Beninu (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Bani (ULT)
Bani (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:17. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:14

Leaders of the people (ULT)
Some of the Israelite leaders also signed the agreement, including (UST)

This refers to those who put their names on the sealed documents. Alternate translation: "The leaders of the people who put their names on the sealed documents were" (See: Ellipsis)

Parosh (ULT)
Parosh (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:25. (See: How to Translate Names)

Pahath-Moab (ULT)
Pahath-Moab (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:11. (See: How to Translate Names)

Elam, Zattu (ULT)
Elam, Zattu (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:12. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• the people
• Leaders of

Translation Words - UST

• Israelite
• Some of the...leaders also signed the agreement, including
Nehemiah 10:15

**General Information:**

In these verses, Nehemiah continues to list the names of the people who signed the sealed document.

**Bunni (ULT)**
**Bunni (UST)**

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 9:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

**Azgad, Bebai (ULT)**
**Azgad, Bebai (UST)**

These are the names of men. See how you translated them in Nehemiah 7:16-17. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:16

Connecting Statement:

The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Adonijah...Adin (ULT)
Adonijah...Adin (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Bigvai (ULT)
Bigvai (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:7. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:17

Connecting Statement:
The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Azzur (ULT)
Azzur (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ater, Hezekiah (ULT)
Ater, Hezekiah (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:20. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:18

Connecting Statement:
The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Hodiah (ULT)
Hodiah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 8:7. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hashum (ULT)
Hashum (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:20. (See: How to Translate Names)

Bezai (ULT)
Bezai (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:19

Connecting Statement:

The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Nebai
This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hariph (ULT)
Hariph (UST)
This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:23. (See: How to Translate Names)

Anathoth (ULT)
Anathoth (UST)
This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:27. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:20

Connecting Statement:

The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Magpiash...Hezir (ULT)
Magpiash...Hezir (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Meshullam (ULT)
Meshullam (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:4. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:21

Connecting Statement:
The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Jaddua (ULT)
Jaddua (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Meshezabel, Zadok (ULT)
Meshezabel, Zadok (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:4. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:22

General Information:

In these verses, Nehemiah continues to list the names of the people who signed the sealed document.

Pelatiah (ULT)
Pelatiah (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hanan (ULT)
Hanan (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:49. (See: How to Translate Names)

Anaiah (ULT)
Anaiah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 8:4 and Nehemiah 3:8. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:23

Connecting Statement:
The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Hoshea, Hananiah (ULT)
Hoshea, Hananiah (UST)

These are the name of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hasshub (ULT)
Hasshub (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:11. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:24

Connecting Statement:

The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Hallohesh (ULT)
Hallohesh (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:11. (See: How to Translate Names)

Pilha, Shobek (ULT)
Pilha, Shobek (UST)

These are the name of men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:25

Connecting Statement:
The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Rehum (ULT)
Rehum (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:17. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hashabnah (ULT)
Hashabnah (UST)

These are the name of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Maaseiah (ULT)
Maaseiah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 3:23. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:26

Ahiah...Anan (ULT)
also Ahiah...Anan (UST)

These are the name of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hanan (ULT)
Hanan (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:27

Connecting Statement:

The list of men whose names appear on the sealed documents Nehemiah 10:1 continues.

Malluk, Harim (ULT)
Malluk, Harim (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 10:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Baanah (ULT)
and Baanah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:6. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 10:28

the gatekeepers (ULT)
the gatekeepers (UST)

This refers to the people assigned to each gate, responsible to control access to the city or temple, as well as to open and close the gates at times and for reasons set by the administrator. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

the singers (ULT)
the singers (UST)

You may need to make explicit that these are those who sang in the temple. Alternate translation: “temple singers” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

all who knowing, understood (ULT)
all...who were old enough to understand what they were doing (UST)

This phrase can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “all who were old enough to understand what promising to obey God meant” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- their sons
- God
- the law of
- who separated
- the priests
- the Levites
- the people
- from the people of
- the gatekeepers
- understood
- who knowing

Translation Words - UST

- and...their sons
- God
- follow the law of
- the men...who had left their people and were living in Israel
- the priests
- the descendants of Levi
- the people
- from the...peoples
- the gatekeepers
- what they were doing
- who were old enough to understand

ULT

28 And the rest of the people, the priests, the Levites, the gatekeepers, the singers, the temple servants, and all who separated from the people of the lands unto the law of God; their women, their sons and their daughters (all who knowing, understood),

UST

28 The rest of the people also participated in the solemn agreement, including the priests, the descendants of Levi, the gatekeepers, the singers, the temple workers, and all the men from the other neighboring peoples who had left their people and were living in Israel in order to follow the law of God, along with their wives and all their sons and daughters who were old enough to understand what they were doing.
Nehemiah 10:29

their brothers, their nobles (ULT)
their associates, who were important men (UST)

“their fellow brothers the nobles” or “their brothers the leaders.” These phrases refer to the same people.

and entered into a curse and an oath (ULT)
and...they all made a solemn agreement...And this is what they promised to do (UST)

This speaks of the people taking an oath and a curse as if the oath and the curse were a rope that physically bound them. Alternate translation: “swore themselves to an oath and a curse” or “they took an oath and called for a curse to come on themselves if they failed to keep it” (See: Metaphor)

to walk in the law of God (ULT)
to obey all the laws...God (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “to live by God’s law” or “to obey God’s law” (See: Idiom)

which was given by the hand of Moses servant of God (ULT)
that...had given by Moses the servant of God (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which Moses the servant of God had given to Israel” (See: Active or Passive)

and to observe (ULT)
They agreed to follow (UST)

“to follow”

Translation Words - ULT

• our Lord
• the commandments of
• their brothers
• God
• in the law of God
• Yahweh
• and an oath
• and his decrees
• Moses
• by the hand of
• and his statutes
• determined
• to walk
• with
• their nobles
• servant of
• into a curse

Translation Words - UST

• our God
• that...had commanded
• their associates
• God
• God
• all the laws...God
• Yahweh
• solemn
• and all his decrees
• Moses
• by
• and instructions
• They all joined...together
• to obey
• with
• who were important men
• the servant of
• a...agreement...And this is what they promised to do
**Nehemiah 10:30**

**General Information:**

In these verses, the people describe the content of the oath they were making in Nehemiah 10:29.

*we would not give our daughters to the people of the land and we would not take their daughters for our sons (ULT)*

*We will...not...allow our daughters to marry people who live in this land who do not worship Yahweh, and we will not allow our sons to marry their daughters (UST)*

This means that they would not allow their sons and daughters to marry them. Alternate translation: “would not give our daughters to marry the people of the land, and we would not take their daughters to marry our sons” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

*to the people of the land (ULT)*

*people who live in this land who do not worship Yahweh (UST)*

This refers to the people who live in their land who do not worship Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the people of this land who do not worship Yahweh” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

*we would not give...we would not take (ULT)*

*We will...not...allow...to marry...we will not allow...to marry (UST)*

The pronoun “we” here includes Nehemiah and the Jewish people, but not the reader of this book. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

**Translation Words - ULT**

- for our sons
  - to the people of

**Translation Words - UST**

- our sons
  - people
Nehemiah 10:31

we would not buy...And we will let rest (ULT)
we will not buy anything...And...we will give rest to the fields and we will not plant any crops that one year (UST)

The pronoun “we” here includes Nehemiah and the Jewish people, but not the reader of this book. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

the seventh year (ULT)
in every seventh year (UST)

“year 7” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

And we will let rest (ULT)
And...we will give rest to the fields and we will not plant any crops that one year (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “we will not plow our fields” or “we will not grow anything in our fields” (See: Idiom)

and the debt of every hand (ULT)
and we will cancel the debts of every person so that they will not have to pay back anything they owe to another person (UST)

This means that they will not require that people pay them what they owe. Alternate translation: “we will cancel all debts that people owe us” or “we will tell people that they no longer have to pay us back”

Translation Words - ULT

- holy
- the Sabbath
- on the Sabbath
- hand
- And the people of
- food

Translation Words - UST

- any other sacred
- Sabbath
- on a Sabbath day
- person...person
- If people
- grain
Nehemiah 10:32

General Information:

In these verses, the people continue describing the content of the oath they were making in Nehemiah 10:29.

And we took upon us the commands (ULT)
We each also agreed to a pledge...must (UST)

“We promised to obey the command”

And we took upon us (ULT)
We each also agreed (UST)

The pronoun “we” here includes all the Israelites including Nehemiah except for the priest and Levites, and does not include the reader of this book (See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

a third of a shekel (ULT)
about 4 grams of silver (UST)

“1/3 of a shekel.” “A third” means one part out of three equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “5 grams of silver” (See: Biblical Money and Fractions)

for the service of (ULT)
for the work of taking care of (UST)

“to pay for the care of”

Translation Words - ULT

• the commands
• our God
• upon us
• upon us
• for the service of
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• to a pledge...must
• the temple
• each
• we
• for the work of taking care of
• the temple
Nehemiah 10:33

For the bread of the presence (ULT)
With that money they can buy these things: The sacred bread that is placed before God (UST)

This refers to the 12 loaves of bread baked without yeast kept in the temple and used to symbolize God's presence with His people.

The new moons (ULT)
And for celebrating each new moon (UST)

These were celebrations held when the moon was just a small crescent in the sky.

Translation Words - ULT

- to make atonement
- and for the holy things
- our God
- Israel
- the Sabbaths
- for the appointed times
- and for the sin offerings
- for
- the new moons
- the...burnt offerings of
- and for the...offering
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- to atone
- and other offerings that are dedicated to God
- the temple
- the sins of the Israelite people
- the sacred offerings for the Sabbath days
- and other festivals that God told us to celebrate
- the animals to be sacrificed
- for
- and for celebrating each new moon
- the animals that are completely burned
- the grain
- the temple
Nehemiah 10:34

General Information:

In these verses, the people continue describing the content of the oath they were making in Nehemiah 10:29.

to be burned (ULT)
to burn the sacrifices (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for the Levites to burn” (See: Active or Passive)

as written in (ULT)
as he commanded (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as it states” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• the altar of
• our God
• our God
• the law
• stated
• Yahweh
• priests, the
• Levites…the
• our fathers
• And...lots
• offering
• for
• on (2)
• into the house of
• to the house of

Translation Words - UST

• the altar for worshiping
• to the temple
• our God
• in the law he gave to Moses
• appointed
• Yahweh
• among the priests
• the descendants of Levi who help the priests
• our Ancestors
• And...lots
• the offering of
• concerning
• on (2)
• to the temple
• which we also call the House of
Nehemiah 10:35

our soil (ULT)
grain that we harvest (UST)

“in our soil” or “on our land”

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• the firstfruits of
• and the firstfruits of
• fruit of
• to the house of

Translation Words - UST

• to the temple
• an offering from the first
• and from...the first
• fruit that grows on
• to the temple

ULT
35 And to bring the firstfruits of our soil, and the firstfruits of any fruit of any tree year after year to the house of Yahweh;

UST
35 We will also obey the command of God in the law that each family must take to the temple every year an offering from the first grain that we harvest and from all the first fruit that grows on all our trees.
Nehemiah 10:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- God
- our God
- in the law
- ministering
- in the house of
- to the priests
- and our livestock
- and our flocks
- and...our firstborn
- and the firstborn of
- to the house of

Translation Words - UST

- our...sons...them
- to the temple
- in the temple
- in his laws
- who minister
- in the temple
- to the priests
- our calves
- and our lambs
- Also, we will dedicate...firstborn...to God by bringing
- And...the firstborn of
- to the temple

ULT

36 and to bring to the house of God—to the priests, ministering in the house of our God—our firstborn sons, and our livestock, as written in the law, and the firstborn of our herds and our flocks.

UST

36 Also, we will dedicate our firstborn sons to God by bringing them to the priests who minister in the temple. And we will also bring the firstborn of our calves and our lambs and our baby goats to the temple to be offered as sacrifices. That is what God said in his laws that we must do.
Nehemiah 10:37

General Information:

In these verses, the people continue describing the content of the oath they were making in Nehemiah verse 29.

we will bring (ULT)
We will...take...We will...take (UST)

The pronoun "we" here includes Nehemiah and the Israelites except for the priests and the Levites, and also does not include the reader of this book (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

our dough (ULT)
the flour made from...grain (UST)

Possible meanings are that this refers to 1) dough made from coarse flour, 2) coarse flour, or 3) ground grain.

wine, and oil (ULT)
wine, olive oil (UST)

The words "first of" are understood from the beginning of the sentences. They can be repeated. Alternate translation: "the first of the new wine and of the oil" or "the best of the new wine and of the oil" (See: Ellipsis)

the storerooms of the house of our God (ULT)
the storehouses in the temple (UST)

“the places where things are stored in the temple”

And the tithes from our soil (ULT)
also...10% of everything we harvest (UST)

Here “our soil” refers to everything that is grown in the ground. Alternate translation: “the tithes of what we grow in the ground” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• our God
• to the priests
• to the Levites
• the Levites
• And the first of
• and the fruit of
• and our wave offerings
• wine
• the house of

ULT

37 And the first of our dough and our wave offerings, and the fruit of every tree, wine, and oil we will bring to the priests, to the storerooms of the house of our God. And the tithes from our soil to the Levites; and they, the Levites, may collect the tithes in all the towns where we serve.

UST

37 We will also take to the priests and to the storehouses in the temple the first of what we harvest, the flour made from the first grain and the first of our other offerings, including wine, olive oil, and the fruit of all our trees. We will also take 10% of everything we harvest to the descendants of Levi, and they themselves will be the ones who collect the tithes in all the towns where we work.
Translation Words - UST

• the temple
• to the priests
• to the descendants of Levi
• themselves
• also...the first of what we harvest...the first...the first of
• including...and the fruit of
• and...our other offerings
• wine
• the temple
Nehemiah 10:38

will receive tithes (ULT)
when they collect...tithes (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the people give them the tithes” (See: Active or Passive)

a tenth of (ULT)
10% of...it (UST)

This means one part out of ten equal parts. (See: Fractions)

the storerooms of the house of the treasury (ULT)
the storerooms in the temple (UST)

“the storerooms in the temple”

Translation Words - ULT

• a son of
• our God
• the priest
• Aaron
• the Levites
• from the Levites
• And the Levites
• to the house of
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• one who is a descendant of
• to the temple
• A priest
• Aaron
• the descendants of Levi
• them...their
• Then the descendants of Levi
• to the temple
• in the temple
**Nehemiah 10:39**

**General Information:**

In these verses, the people finish describing the content of the oath they were making in **Nehemiah 10:29**.

**to the storerooms (ULT)**
**to the storerooms (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the rooms where the priests keep the things that are used in the temple” (See: Active or Passive)

**the wave offerings of...And we will not neglect...the house of...our God (ULT)**
**the offerings of...We promise that we will not neglect taking care of...the temple of...our God (UST)**

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “We will care for the temple”

**we will...neglect (ULT)**
**We promise that we will...neglect taking care of (UST)**

The pronoun “we” here includes Nehemiah and all the people of Israel but does not include the reader of this book. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

**Translation Words - ULT**

- the sons of
- and the sons of
- our God
- who are serving
- the sanctuary
- Israel
- and priests
- Levi
- we will...neglect
- and the gatekeepers
- the wave offerings of
- and oil
- wine
- grain
- the house of

**Translation Words - UST**

- people...the...of
- the...of...and...descendants
- our God
- who are serving at that time
various...that are used by those who serve in the temple
Israel
the priests
Levi
We promise that we will...neglect taking care of
the gatekeepers
the offerings of
and olive oil
wine
grain
the temple of
Nehemiah 11

Nehemiah 11 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The places where the Jews lived

Some people lived in Jerusalem, but most people lived in villages and towns away from Jerusalem. They lived there in order to farm the land raise their animals. The city with its walls was there to provide all of the people with protection if enemies attacked them.
Nehemiah 11:1

the people cast lots (ULT)
the people cast lots (UST)

“The people threw marked stones”

to bring one from ten (ULT)
to select one family out of ten (UST)

“to bring one family out of every ten families”

Translation Words - ULT

• holy
• in Jerusalem
• in Jerusalem
• the people
• the people
• lots
• the leaders of

Translation Words - UST

• set apart for God
• in Jerusalem
• in Jerusalem
• Israelite
• the people
• lots
• the...leaders and their families

ULT

1 Now the leaders of the people lived in Jerusalem, and the rest of the people cast lots to bring one from ten to live in Jerusalem, the holy city; and nine were the hands in the towns.

UST

1 So the Israelite leaders and their families settled in Jerusalem. The remainder of the people cast lots to select one family out of ten who would live in Jerusalem, the city set apart for God. The remaining nine lived in the other towns.
Nehemiah 11:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And...blessed
- in Jerusalem
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- asked God to bless
- in Jerusalem
- The people

ULT
2 And the people blessed all the ones volunteering to live in Jerusalem.

UST
2 The people asked God to bless all those who volunteered to live in Jerusalem.
Nehemiah 11:3

some of the Israelites...on his property in their towns (ULT)
on his own family property in their towns--the Israelites (UST)

“on his own land: Israelites”

Translation Words - ULT

• and the sons of
• some of the Israelites
• the priests
• Judah
• Solomon
• and the Levites
• in Jerusalem
• are the leaders of
• the province
• the servants of

Translation Words - UST

• and the descendants of
• the Israelites
• the priests
• Judah
• Solomon
• the descendants of Levi
• in Jerusalem
• the...officials
• provincial
• the servants of

ULT

3 And these are the leaders of the province who lived in Jerusalem (some of the Israelites, the priests, and the Levites, and the temple servants, and the sons of the servants of Solomon) lived in the towns of Judah, each on his property in their towns,

UST

3 These are the names of the provincial officials who came to live in Jerusalem. But in the towns of Judah everyone lived on his own family property in their towns—the Israelites, the priests, the descendants of Levi, the temple servants, and the descendants of the servants of Solomon.
Nehemiah 11:4

From the sons of Judah and from the...of Benjamin...sons (ULT)
some of the people of Judah and the people of Benjamin (UST)
“some of the people of Judah and some of the people of Benjamin”
sons...From the...of Judah (ULT)
Here are the names of the leaders who lived in Jerusalem. From the descendants of Judah, these included (UST)
“From the descendants of Judah:”
Judah...of Benjamin...Athaiah...Uzziah...Zechariah...Amariah...Shephatiah...Mahalalel, of...Perez (ULT)
Judah...Benjamin...Athaiah...Uzziah...Zechariah...Amariah...Shephatiah...Mahalalel...Perez (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

the sons of Perez (ULT)
a descendant of Perez (UST)
“from the descendants of Perez”

Translation Words - UST

• some of...the people of
• the people of...and
• Here are the names of the leaders who lived in Jerusalem. From the descendants of...these included
• the son of
• the son of
• the son of (2)
• the son of (2)
• the son of (3)
• a descendant of
• Judah
• Judah
• Benjamin
• But...in Jerusalem
Nehemiah 11:5

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, Nehemiah continues to list the provincial officers who lived in Jerusalem.

And Maaseiah...Baruch...Kol-Hozeh...Hazaiah...Adaiah...Joiarib...Zechariah (ULT)
and Maaseiah...Baruch...Colhozeh...Hazaiah...Adaiah...Joiarib...Zechariah (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Shilonite (ULT)
the descendants of Shelah the son of Judah (UST)

This refers to a person who comes from the town of Shiloh.

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• son of (2)
• son of (2)
• son of (3)
• son of (3)
• son of (4)

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• the son of
• the son of (2)
• the son of (2)
• the son of (3)
• the son of (3)
• who was one of (4)
Nehemiah 11:6

Perez (ULT)
Perez (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

All...in Jerusalem: 468 (ULT)
There were...468...in the city of Jerusalem (UST)

“All...were four hundred and sixty-eight.” Perez had 468 descendants who lived in Jerusalem. (See: Numbers)

men of valor (ULT)
men...These men were very brave and skilled in combat (UST)

“They were courageous men” or “They were valiant men”

Translation Words - ULT

• the sons of
• in Jerusalem
• valor

Translation Words - UST

• who were descendants of
• in the city of Jerusalem
• were very brave and skilled in combat
Nehemiah 11:7

Connecting Statement:

In these verses, Nehemiah continues to list the provincial officers who lived in Jerusalem.

And these sons of (ULT)
These are the descendants of...who decided to live in Jerusalem (UST)

“These are some of the descendants.” Your language may need to specify that this is not a list of every descendant.

Benjamin: Sallu...Meshullam...Joed...Pedaiah...Kolaiah...Maaseiah...Ithiel...Jeshaiah (ULT)
Benjamin...Sallu...Meshullam...Joed...Pedaiah...Kolaiah...Maaseiah...Ithiel...Jeshaiah (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• son of
• son of (2)
• son of (3)
• son of
• son of (2)
• son of (4)
• son of (5)
• Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

• the descendants of
• the son of
• the son of (2)
• the son of (3)
• the son of
• the son of (2)
• the son of (4)
• the son of (5)
• Benjamin
Nehemiah 11:8

Gabbai, Sallai (ULT)
Gabbai and Sallai (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

928 (ULT)
Altogether, 928 people from the tribe of Benjamin settled in Jerusalem (UST)

“nine hundred and twenty-eight men.” (See: Numbers)

ULT
8 and following him, Gabbai, Sallai, 928.

UST
8 and after him, two men named Gabbai and Sallai. Altogether, 928 people from the tribe of Benjamin settled in Jerusalem.
Nehemiah 11:9

Joel...Zichri...Judah...Hassenuah

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• and Judah
• was an overseer
• over them
• over

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• the son of
• and Judah
• leader
• Their
• in

ULT
9 And Joel son of Zichri was an overseer over them, and Judah son of Hassenuah was second over the city.

UST
9 Their leader was Joel the son of Zichri, and Judah the son of Hassenuah was the official who was second in command in Jerusalem.
Nehemiah 11:10

Jediaiah...Joiarib, Jakin (ULT)
Jediaiah...Joiarib; Jachin (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• the priests

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• The priests
Nehemiah 11:11

Seraiah...Hilkiah...Meshullam...Zadok (ULT)
Seraiah...Hilkiah...Meshullam...Zadok (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• son of (2)
• of...son (3)
• son...of (4)
• God
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• the son of
• the son of (2)
• the son of (3)
• the son of (4)
• the temple
• the temple

ULT

11 Seraiah son of Hilkiah son of
Meshullam son of Zadok son of
Meraioth son of Ahitub, governor of the
house of God.

UST

11 Seraiah the son of Hilkiah, the son of
Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the son of
Meraioth, the son of Ahitub, who was
previously in charge of the temple.
Nehemiah 11:12

and Adaiah...Jeroham...Pelaliah...Amzi...Zechariah...Pashhur...Malkijah (ULT)

Another priest who settled in Jerusalem was Adaiah...Jeroham...Pelaliah...Amzi...Zechariah...Pashhur...Malkijah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

and their brothers (ULT)
another...of their associates (UST)

“their brothers” or “their kinsmen”

were doing the work for the house (ULT)
who performed work for the temple (UST)

“who worked in the temple.” The “house” referred to here is the “house of God” mentioned in the previous verse.

822 (ULT)
822 (UST)

“eight hundred and twenty-two men” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• and their brothers
• son of
• son of (2)
• son of (3)
• son of
• son of (4)
• son of (5)
• for the house

Translation Words - UST

• another...of their associates
• the son of
• the son of (2)
• the son of (3)
• the son of
• the son of (4)
• the son of (5)
• for the temple
Nehemiah 11:13

And his brothers (ULT)
and another...of his associates...settled in Jerusalem (UST)

the brothers of Adaiah, the son of Jeroham (Nehemiah 11:12).

And his brothers (ULT)
and another...of his associates...settled in Jerusalem (UST)

This word is a metaphor for 1) fellow Israelites or 2) people who did the same work. Alternate translation: “associates” or “fellow workers” (See: Metaphor)

242 (ULT)
242 (UST)

“two hundred and forty-two men” (See: Numbers)

and Amashsai...Azarel...Ahzai...Meshillemoth...Immer (ULT)
Another priest who settled in Jerusalem was Amashsai...Azarel...Ahzai...Meshillemoth...Immer (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• And his brothers
• son of
• son of (2)
• son of (3)
• son of (4)
• patriarchal
• were...heads

Translation Words - UST

• and another...of his associates...settled in Jerusalem
• the son of
• the son of (2)
• the son of (3)
• the son of (4)
• of ancestral clans
• who were leaders
Nehemiah 11:14

was Zabdiel...Haggedolim (ULT)
Zabdiel...Haggedolim (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

strongmen of valor, 128 (ULT)
128...who were valiant soldiers (UST)

“one hundred and twenty-eight courageous fighting men.” These were “valiant warriors” or “courageous warriors.” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• and their brothers
• son of
• strongmen of
• valor
• and the overseer
• over them

Translation Words - UST

• and another...of their associates...settled in Jerusalem
• the son of
• who were...soldiers
• valiant
• leader was
• Their
Nehemiah 11:15

Shemaiah...Hasshub...Azrikam...Hashabiah...Bunni (ULT)
Shemaiah...Hasshub...Azrikam...Hashabiah...Bunni (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• son of (2)
• son of (3)
• the Levites

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• the son of
• the son of (2)
• the son of (3)
• The descendants of Levi

ULT

15 And from the Levites: Shemaiah son of Hasshub son of Azrikam son of Hashabiah son of Bunni,

UST

15 The descendants of Levi who settled in Jerusalem included: Shemaiah the son of Hasshub, the son of Azrikam, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Bunni;
Nehemiah 11:16

and Shabbethai and Jozabad (ULT)
and Shabbethai and Jozabad (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

over...from the heads of the Levites (ULT)
who supervised...and were leaders of the descendants of Levi (UST)

“from the leaders of the Levites, were in charge”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• the Levites
• from the heads of
• over
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• the temple
• the descendants of Levi
• and were leaders of
• who supervised
• the temple

ULT
16 and Shabbethai and Jozabad over the work of the outside of the house of God, from the heads of the Levites.

UST
16 and Shabbethai and Jozabad, who supervised the work outside the temple and were leaders of the descendants of Levi.
Nehemiah 11:17

Mattaniah...Mika...Zabdi...Asaph...Bakbukiah...Abda...Shammua...Galal...Jeduthun

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

head of the beginning of the thanksgiving prayer (ULT)
who directed the temple choir when they sang the prayers to thank God (UST)

That is, who directed the singers.

and Bakbukiah, second among his brothers (ULT)
and Bakbukiah, the second in charge of the associates of Mattaniah (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) Bakbukiah was Mattaniah's kinsman and second in authority to Mattaniah or 2) “Bakbukiah, who led a second group of singers.”

among his brothers (ULT)
of the associates of Mattaniah (UST)

Another possible meaning is “associates” or “fellow workers.”

Translation Words - ULT

• among his brothers
• son of
• son of
• son of (2)
• son of (2)
• son of (3)
• son of (4)
• prayer
• Asaph
• head of

Translation Words - UST

• of the associates of Mattaniah
• the son of
• the son of
• the son of (2)
• the son of (2)
• the son of (3)
• the son of (4)
• to thank God
• Asaph
• who directed
Nehemiah 11:18

in the holy city (ULT)
in Jerusalem, the city set apart for God (UST)

This expression refers to the city of Jerusalem.

284 (ULT)
284 (UST)

“numbered two hundred and eighty-four.” There were 284 Levites in Jerusalem. (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• holy
• the Levites

Translation Words - UST

• set apart for God
• descendants of Levi
Nehemiah 11:19

And the gatekeepers (ULT)
The gatekeepers who settled in Jerusalem included (UST)

people assigned to each gate, responsible to control access to the city or temple, as well as to open and close the gates at times and for reasons set by the administrator. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

Akkub, Talmon (ULT)
Akkub, Talmon (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

172 (ULT)
172 (UST)

“one hundred and seventy-two men” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• and their brothers
• And the gatekeepers
• at the gates

Translation Words - UST

• and...of their associates
• The gatekeepers who settled in Jerusalem included
• at the gates
Nehemiah 11:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- was on his own allotment
- Israel
- the priests
- Judah
- the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- on their own property
- the Israelite people
- including the priests
- Judea
- and the descendants of Levi

ULT
20 And the remainder of Israel, the priests, the Levites; in all the towns of Judah, each man was on his own allotment.

UST
20 The remainder of the Israelite people including the priests and the descendants of Levi all lived on their own property in all the other towns in Judea.
Nehemiah 11:21

and Ziha and Gishpa (ULT)
and Ziha and Gishpa (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)
in Ophel (ULT)
on Ophel Hill in Jerusalem (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT
21 And the temple servants lived in Ophel, and Ziha and Gishpa were over the temple servants.

UST
21 The temple workers lived on Ophel Hill in Jerusalem; and Ziha and Gishpa supervised them.
Nehemiah 11:22

And the supervisor (ULT)
The man who supervised...was (UST)

“The overseer of”

was Uzzi...Bani...Hashabiah...Mattaniah...Mika...Asaph (ULT)
Uzzi...Uzzi...Bani...Hashabiah...Mattaniah...Mika...Asaph (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• son of (2)
• son of (3)
• from the sons of
• God
• over the Levites
• in Jerusalem
• And the supervisor
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• the son of
• the son of (2)
• the son of (3)
• was one of the descendants of
• the temple
• the descendants of Levi
• who lived in Jerusalem
• The man who supervised...was
• the temple

ULT

22 And the supervisor over the Levites in Jerusalem was Uzzi son of Bani son of Hashabiah son of Mattaniah son of Mika, from the sons of Asaph, singers before the work of the house of God.

UST

22 The man who supervised the descendants of Levi who lived in Jerusalem was Uzzi the son of Bani, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Mattaniah, the son of Mika. Uzzi was one of the descendants of Asaph, who were the singers in charge of the music for the temple services.
Nehemiah 11:23

the instruction of the king being on them (ULT)
We commissioned him because the king of Persia had commanded...must...for the singers (UST)

“The king had told them what to do”

even strictly for the singers (ULT)
that a certain amount of supplies...be provided...to sing in the temple services...singing (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the king had told them specifically what to do about the singers” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• the instruction of
  • the king

Translation Words - UST

• had commanded...must
  • the king of Persia

ULT
23 the instruction of the king being on them, even strictly for the singers, as each day required.

UST
23 We commissioned him because the king of Persia had commanded that a certain amount of supplies must be provided for the singers to sing in the temple services every day, each one singing on his assigned day.
Nehemiah 11:24

And Pethahiah the son of Meshezabel, from the sons of Zerah the son of Judah, was one of the descendants of Zerah, the son of Judah; Pethahiah was the ambassador to the king of Persia for any matter pertaining to the Israelites.

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

was at hand to the king in all matters of the people
was the ambassador to the king of Persia for any matter pertaining to the Israelites
“at the Persian king’s side as an adviser in all matters concerning the Jewish people”

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• from the sons of
• son of (2)
• Judah
• the people
• to the king

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• was one of the descendants of
• the son of (2)
• Judah
• pertaining to the Israelites
• the king of Persia
Nehemiah 11:25

in Kiriath Arba...and in Dibon...and in Jekabzeel (ULT)
in the city of Kiriath Arba...some...in the city of Dibon...some...in the town of Jekabzeel (UST)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• those of the sons of
• Judah

Translation Words - UST

• some people who were descendants of
• Judah

ULT
25 And for the settlements among their fields, those of the sons of Judah lived in Kiriath Arba and its villages, and in Dibon and its villages, and in Jekabzeel and her settlements,

UST
25 Concerning the people who did not settle in Jerusalem but lived in towns and villages near their farms: some people who were descendants of Judah settled in the city of Kiriath Arba and the neighboring villages; some settled in the city of Dibon and the neighboring villages; some settled in the town of Jekabzeel and the neighboring villages.
Nehemiah 11:26

and in Jeshua, and Moladah, and in Beth Pelet (ULT)
some in the town of Jeshua; some in the town of
Moladah; some in the town of Bethpelet (UST)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 11:27

and in Hazar Shual, and in Beersheba (ULT)
some in Hazarshual; and some in the city of Beersheba
(UST)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• and in Beersheba

Translation Words - UST

• and some in the city of Beersheba
Nehemiah 11:28

and in Ziklag, and Mekonah (ULT)
some in the town of Ziklag; some in the town of
Mekonah (UST)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 11:29

Enrimmon...Zorah...Jarmuth

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ULT</th>
<th>UST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>29 and in Enrimmon,</td>
<td>29 some in the town of En-Rimmon;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and in Zorah, and</td>
<td>some in the town of Zorah; some in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in Jarmuth,</td>
<td>town of Jarmuth;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nehemiah 11:30

Zanoah, Adullam...Lachish...Azekah...from Beersheba...the Valley of Hinnom (ULT)
some in Zanoah and Adullam...some in Lachish...some in Azekah...Beersheba in the south...the Valley of Hinnom in the north, which is at the edge of Jerusalem (UST)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

And they encamped (ULT)
All of those people pitched their tents in Judea (UST)

Here “they” refers to the people of Judah.

Translation Words - ULT
• from Beersheba

Translation Words - UST
• Beersheba in the south
Nehemiah 11:31

And the sons of Benjamin from Geba, Mikmash and Aija (ULT)
Some people who were descendants of Benjamin settled in these cities and towns: Geba, Mikmash, Aija (UST)

“The people of Benjamin lived in Geba, Mikmash and Aija”

from Geba, Mikmash and Aija, and Bethel (ULT)
Geba, Micmash, Aija, Bethel (UST)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

and Aija (ULT)
Aija (UST)

This is possibly another name for the town of Ai.

Translation Words - ULT

• And the sons of
• Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

• Some people who were descendants of...settled in these cities and towns
• Benjamin
Nehemiah 11:32

Anathoth, Nob, Ananiah (ULT)
Anathoth, Nob, Ananiah (UST)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 11:33

Hazor, Ramah, Gittaim (ULT)
Hazor, Ramah, Gittaim (UST)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Ramah

Translation Words - UST

• Ramah
Nehemiah 11:34

Hadid, Zeboim, Neballat (ULT)
Hadid, Zeboim, Neballat (UST)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 11:35

the valley of craftsmen (ULT)
the Valley of Craftsmen (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this is a description of Ono or 2) it is “Craftsmen's Valley” or “the Valley of Craftsmen,” another name for Ono, or 3) it is a different place from Ono, “and the Valley of Craftsmen.” (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 11:36

And some of the Levites, assigned to Judah, in Benjamin (ULT)

Some groups of people who were descendants of Levi and who had previously lived in Judea went and settled in the land that had belonged to the old tribe of Benjamin (UST)

It is not clear who assigned these Levites to live with the people of Benjamin. Alternate translation: “They assigned some of the Levites who lived in Judah to serve the people of Benjamin” or “The officials assigned some of the Levites who lived in Judah to serve the people of Benjamin” (See: Active or Passive and Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- to Judah
- in Benjamin
- the Levites

Translation Words - UST

- and who had previously lived in Judea
- went and settled in the land that had belonged to the old tribe of Benjamin
- who were descendants of Levi
Nehemiah 12

Nehemiah 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Dedication of the wall

In the ancient Near East, it was common to dedicate an important structure to a god. When it was completed, the wall was dedicated to Yahweh. Long lists of people are present, indicating that “everyone” was present for this and praised Yahweh. (See: god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry)
Nehemiah 12:1

who came up (ULT)
that returned from Babylonia (UST)

“who arrived from Babylonia”

with Zerubbabel (ULT)
with Zerubbabel (UST)

“under the leadership of Zerubbabel”

Zerubbabel...Shealtiel and Jeshua: Seraiah, Jeremiah, Ezra (ULT)
Zerubbabel...Shealtiel and Jeshua the Supreme Priest. They included Seraiah, Jeremiah, Ezra (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

and Jeshua (ULT)
and Jeshua the Supreme Priest (UST)

The original readers would have understood that Jeshua was the high priest. Alternate translation: “Jeshua the high priest” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• the priests
• and Levites
• Ezra
• Zerubbabel

Translation Words - UST

• the son of
• the priests
• and the descendants of Levi
• Ezra
• Zerubbabel
Nehemiah 12:2

Amariah, Malluk, Hattush (ULT)
Amariah, Malluk, Hattush (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 12:3

Shecaniah, Rehum, Meremoth (ULT)
Shecaniah, Rehum, Meremoth (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 12:4

Connecting Statement:
The list that began in Nehemiah 12:1 continues.

Iddo, Ginnethon, Abijah (ULT)
Iddo, Ginnethoi, Abijah (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 12:5

Mijamin, Moadiah, Bilgah (ULT)
Mijamin, Maadiah, Bilgah (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 12:6

Shemaiah, and Joiarib, Jedaiah (ULT)
Shemaiah, and Joiarib, Jedaiah (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 12:7

Sallu, Amok, Hilkiah, Jediah...Jeshua (ULT)
Sallu, Amok, Hilkiah, and Jediah...Jeshua was the Supreme Priest (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- and their brothers
- the priests
- were leaders of

Translation Words - UST

- and their associates
- the priests
- leaders of

ULT

7 Sallu, Amok, Hilkiah, Jediah. These were leaders of the priests and their brothers in the days of Jeshua.

UST

7 Sallu, Amok, Hilkiah, and Jediah. All those men were leaders of the priests and their associates during the time that Jeshua was the Supreme Priest.
Nehemiah 12:8

Jeshua, Binnui, Kadmiel, Sherebiah, Judah, and Mattaniah (ULT)
Jeshua, Binnui, Kadmiel, Sherebiah, Judah, and Mattaniah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• and his brothers
• And the Levites

Translation Words - UST

• and his associates
• Some of the other descendants of Levi who returned were

ULT

8 And the Levites: Jeshua, Binnui, Kadmiel, Sherebiah, Judah, and Mattaniah, over the thanksgivings, he and his brothers.

UST

8 Some of the other descendants of Levi who returned were Jeshua, Binnui, Kadmiel, Sherebiah, Judah, and Mattaniah. Mattaniah and his associates led the people in singing songs to thank God.
Nehemiah 12:9

Bakbukiah...Unni

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

opposite them in the services (ULT)
stood opposite them for the worship services (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this was during a worship service and these were two groups of singers or other worshipers, or 2) these groups guarded the temple at different times, or “took turns guarding the temple.”

Translation Words - ULT

• their brothers

Translation Words - UST

• their associates
Nehemiah 12:10

And Jeshua...Joiakim...Eliashib...Joiada (ULT)
Jeshua the Supreme Priest...Joiakim...Eliashib...was the father of Joiada (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

And Jeshua fathered Joiakim (ULT)
Jeshua the Supreme Priest was the father of Joiakim (UST)

This is the same Jeshua named in Nehemiah 12:1. The original readers would have understood that Jeshua was the high priest. Alternate translation: “Jeshua the high priest was the father of Joiakim” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
Nehemiah 12:11

Joiada…Jonathan…Jaddua (ULT)
who…Jonathan…Jaddua (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT
11 Joiada fathered Jonathan, and
Jonathan fathered Jaddua.

UST
11 who was the father of Jonathan, who
was the father of Jaddua.
Nehemiah 12:12

Joiakim...Meraiah...Hananiah (ULT)
Joiakim...Meraiah...Hananiah (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Seraiah...to Jeremiah (ULT)
was the leader of the clan of Seraiah...was the leader of the clan of Jeremiah (UST)

These are names of families named after men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• the priests
• fatherly
• the...heads

Translation Words - UST

• these priests
• their clans
• the leaders of

ULT

12 And in the days of Joiakim were the priests, the fatherly heads: to Seraiah, Meraiah; to Jeremiah, Hananiah;

UST

12 When Joiakim was the Supreme Priest, these priests were the leaders of their clans. Meraiah was the leader of the clan of Seraiah. Hananiah was the leader of the clan of Jeremiah.
Nehemiah 12:13

Meshullam...Jehohanan (ULT)
Meshullam...Jehohanan (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Ezra...to Amariah (ULT)
was the leader of the clan of Ezra...was the leader of the clan of Amariah (UST)

These are names of families named after men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• to Ezra

Translation Words - UST

• was the leader of the clan of Ezra
Nehemiah 12:14

Jonathan...Joseph (ULT)
Jonathan...Joseph (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Malluk...to Shebaniah (ULT)
was the leader of the clan of Malluchi...was the leader of the clan of Shecaniah (UST)

These are names of families named after men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 12:15

Connecting Statement:

The list that began in Nehemiah 12:12 continues.

Adna...Helkai (ULT)
Adna...Helkai (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Harim...to Meremoth (ULT)
was the leader of the clan of Harim...was the leader of the clan of Meraioth (UST)

These are all names of families that are named after men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 12:16

Zechariah...Meshullam (ULT)
Zechariah...Meshullam (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Iddo...to Ginnethon (ULT)
was the leader of the clan of Iddo...was the leader of the clan of Ginnethon (UST)

These are all names of families that are named after men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Ginnethon, Meshullam (ULT)
Meshullam was the leader of the clan of Ginnethon (UST)

Ginnethon may be another form of the name Ginnethoi.
Nehemiah 12:17

Zichri...Piltai (ULT)
Zichri...Piltai (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Abijah...to Miniamin; to Moadiah (ULT)
was the leader of the clan of Abijah...was the leader of both the clan of Miniamin and the clan of Moadiah (UST)

These are all names of families that are named after men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Miniamin (ULT)
was the leader of both the clan of Miniamin (UST)

The people who made the copies of Hebrew text mistakenly left out the name of the leader of the family of Miniamin. Translators may supply a footnote explaining this. The ULT uses “…” to show that the name of the leader is missing. Alternate translation: “Someone was the leader of Miniamin”

to Moadiah (ULT)
and the clan of Moadiah (UST)

Maadiah may be another form of the name Moadiah.
Nehemiah 12:18

Shammua...Jehonathan (ULT)
Shammua...Jehonathan (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Bilgah...to Shemaiah (ULT)
was the leader of the clan of Bilgah...was the leader of
the clan of Shemaiah (UST)

These are all names of families that are named after men. (See: How
to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 12:19

Mattenai...Uzzi (ULT)
Mattenai...Uzzi (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Joiarib...to Jedaiah (ULT)
was the leader of the clan of Joiarib...was the leader of the clan of Jedaiah (UST)

These are all names of families that are named after men. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 12:20

Kallai...Eber (ULT)
Kallai...Eber (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Sallu...to Amok (ULT)
was the leader of the clan of Sallai...was the leader of
the clan of Amok (UST)

These are all names of families that are named after men. (See: How
to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 12:21

Hashabiah...Nethanel (ULT)
Hashabiah...Nethanel (UST)

These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

to Hilkiah...to Jedaiah (ULT)
was the leader of the clan of Hilkiah...was the leader of the clan of Jedaiah (UST)

These are all names of families that are named after men. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT
21 to Hilkiah, Hashabiah; to Jedaiah, Nethanel;

UST
21 Hashabiah was the leader of the clan of Hilkiah. Nethanel was the leader of the clan of Jedaiah.
Nehemiah 12:22

Eliashib, Joiada, and Johanan, and Jaddua (ULT)

Eliashib, Joiada, Johanan, and Jaddua (UST)

names of men (See: How to Translate Names)

during the reign of Darius (ULT)
when Darius was king (UST)

Another possible meaning is “until the reign of Darius”

Translation Words - ULT

• and the priests
• Darius
• The Levites
• the Persian
• fatherly
• as the...heads
• during
• the reign of

Translation Words - UST

• of the priests
• Darius
• of the descendants of Levi
• of Persia
• clan...clan
• the names of the...leaders...the names of the...leaders
• when
• was king

ULT

22 The Levites in the days of Eliashib: Joiada, and Johanan, and Jaddua, were recorded as the fatherly heads, and the priests during the reign of Darius the Persian.

UST

22 Some scribes wrote down the names of the clan leaders of the descendants of Levi during the time when Eliashib, Joiada, Johanan, and Jaddua were Supreme Priests. They wrote down the names of the clan leaders of the priests when Darius was king of Persia.
Nehemiah 12:23

were recorded in the scroll of the happenings of (ULT)
They wrote down...in...Book of Events and (UST)

This may refer to the Book of Chronicles. The scribes wrote the words in the verses above in a book that recorded the events of each day.

and up to the days of Johanan son of Eliashib (ULT)
up until the time when Johanan the descendant of Eliashib was the Supreme Priest (UST)

The records in the temple recorded only up until Johanan.

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of
• son of
• Levi
• fatherly
• the...heads

Translation Words - UST

• of the descendants of
• the descendant of
• Levi
• clan
• the names of the...leaders

ULT
23 The sons of Levi, the fatherly heads, were recorded in the scroll of the happenings of the days and up to the days of Johanan son of Eliashib.

UST
23 They wrote down the names of the clan leaders of the descendants of Levi in the Book of Events and Times up until the time when Johanan the descendant of Eliashib was the Supreme Priest.
Nehemiah 12:24

were Hashabiah, Sherebiah, and Jeshua...Kadmiel (ULT)
Hashabiah, Serebiah, and Jeshua...Kadmiel (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

opposite them, to praise and give thanks, as instructed by David, the man of God, section by section (ULT)
stood opposite them to praise God and give thanks to him, with one group facing the other group, just as King David, the man who served God faithfully, had instructed (UST)

This refers to how they sang some of their songs in worship. A leader or one group would sing a phrase, then one or two groups that “stood opposite them” would sing a phrase in response.

as instructed by David (ULT)
just as King David...had instructed (UST)

King David had commanded the Levites how they were to organize and lead worship.

Translation Words - ULT

• as instructed
• and their brothers
• son of
• God
• by David
• the Levites
• The heads of
• to praise
• section
• section

Translation Words - UST

• just as...had instructed
• And their associates
• the son of
• served God faithfully
• King David
• the descendants of Levi
• were the leaders of
• to praise God
• with one group
• the other group
Nehemiah 12:25

Mattaniah, and Bakbukiah, Obadiah, Meshullam, Talmon, and Akkub (ULT)
Mattaniah, and Bakbukiah, Obadiah, Meshullam, Talmon, and Akkub (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
- the gates
- were guards
- standing guard

Translation Words - UST
- the gates
- were...They stood
- guard

ULT
25 Mattaniah, and Bakbukiah, Obadiah, Meshullam, Talmon, Akkub were guards, gatekeepers standing guard at the thresholds of the gates.

UST
25 Mattaniah, and Bakbukiah, Obadiah, Meshullam, Talmon, and Akkub were gatekeepers. They stood guard at the storerooms near the gates.
These were in the days of Joiakim son of Jeshua son of Jozadak, and in the days of Nehemiah the governor and Ezra the priest, the scribe.

This date was fixed by listing those who were leading the Jews at the time. "when Joiakim...Jozadak was high priest, and when Nehemiah was governor and Ezra...was the scribe."

**Translation Words - ULT**
- the scribe
- son of
- son of (2)
- the priest
- and Ezra
- Jeshua
- Nehemiah
- the governor

**Translation Words - UST**
- and scribe
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- both priest
- and Ezra served as
- Jeshua
- Nehemiah served as
- governor
Nehemiah 12:27

And at the dedication of the wall of Jerusalem (ULT)
When we dedicated the wall around Jerusalem (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “At the time when they dedicated the wall of Jerusalem” or 2) “So that the dedication of Jerusalem’s wall could take place.”

cymbals (ULT)
with cymbals (UST)

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: Translate Unknowns)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Levites
• Jerusalem
• to Jerusalem
• and rejoicing
• And at the dedication of
• the dedication
• they sought out
• with...and lyres

Translation Words - UST

• the descendants of Levi
• around Jerusalem
• to Jerusalem
• by rejoicing
• When we dedicated
• with the dedication of the wall
• we summoned
• and harps
Nehemiah 12:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• the sons of
• Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

• the descendants of
• Jerusalem...the city

ULT
28 And the sons of the singers gathered, and from the valley surrounding Jerusalem and from the villages of the Netophathites.

UST
28 We summoned the descendants of Levi who habitually sang together. They came to Jerusalem from nearby areas where they had settled around the city, and from places around the village of Netophah southeast of Jerusalem,
Nehemiah 12:29

And from Beth Gilgal...Geba and Azmaveth (ULT)
They came also from...Beth Gilgal...Geba and Azmaveth (UST)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• And from Beth Gilgal
• Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

• Gilgal
• Jerusalem...Jerusalem

ULT
29 And from Beth Gilgal and from the fields of Geba and Azmaveth, for the singers had built for themselves villages surrounding Jerusalem.

UST
29 They came also from three places northeast of Jerusalem, Beth Gilgal and the areas around Geba and Azmaveth. We summoned those singers because they had built villages to live in near Jerusalem.
Nehemiah 12:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And...purified themselves
- and they purified
- the priests
- and the Levites
- the people
- and the gates

Translation Words - UST

- performed rituals to cause themselves to be acceptable to God
- and then they performed similar rituals to purify
- The priests
- and the descendants of Levi who help the priests
- the other people
- the gates

ULT

30 And the priests and the Levites purified themselves, and they purified the people and the gates and the wall.

UST

30 The priests and the descendants of Levi who help the priests performed rituals to cause themselves to be acceptable to God, and then they performed similar rituals to purify the other people, the gates, and the wall.
Nehemiah 12:31

the leaders of Judah (ULT)
the leaders of Judah (UST)

the leaders of the people who lived in the region of Judah

Translation Words - ULT

• and I appointed
• Judah
• the leaders of

Translation Words - UST

• and I appointed them to lead
• Judah
• the leaders of

ULT

31 And I had the leaders of Judah go up on the wall, and I appointed two large choirs, going to the right on the wall toward the Dung Gate,

UST

31 Then I gathered together the leaders of Judah on top of the wall, and I appointed them to lead two large groups to march around the city on top of the wall, thanking God. As they faced the city, one group walked to the right toward the Dung Gate.
Nehemiah 12:32

Hoshaiah (ULT)
Hoshaiah (UST)

These are the names of males. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
- Judah
- the leaders of

Translation Words - UST
- Judah
- the leaders of

ULT
32 and Hoshaiah and half the leaders of Judah followed after them,

UST
32 Hoshaiah and half of the leaders of Judah marched behind that group.
Nehemiah 12:33

and Azariah, Ezra, and Meshullam (ULT)
The people who marched with that group included
Azariah, Ezra, Meshullam (UST)

These are the names of males. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Ezra

Translation Words - UST

• Ezra
Nehemiah 12:34

Judah, and Benjamin, and Shemaiah, and Jeremiah (ULT)
Judah, Benjamin, Shemaiah, and Jeremiah (UST)

These are the names of males. (See: How to Translate Names)
Nehemiah 12:35

Zechariah...Jonathan...Shemaiah...Mattaniah...of Micaiah...Zaccur...Asaph (ULT)  
Zechariah...Jonathan...Shemaiah...Mattaniah...Micaiah...Zaccur...Asaph (UST)

These are the names of males. (See: How to Translate Names)

and some from the sons of the priests, with trumpets:  
Zechariah (ULT)  
Some descendants of the priests also marched with that group and played their trumpets, including Zechariah (UST)

Some versions read, “from among the priests with trumpets, Zechariah”

Zechariah son of Jonathan son of Shemaiah son of Mattaniah son of Micaiah son of Zaccur son of Asaph

All of the names after “Zechariah” are the ancestors of Zechariah. This list connects Zechariah with the famous singer Asaph. “Zechariah who was the son of Jonathan, who was the son of Shemaiah, who was the son of Mattaniah, who was the son of Micaiah, who was the son of Zaccur son of Asaph”

Translation Words - ULT

- and some from the sons of
- of...son
- son...of
- son...of (2)
- son (3)
- son of (4)
- son of (5)
- the priests
- with trumpets

Translation Words - UST

- Some descendants of the...also marched with that group
- the son of
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the son of (4)
- the son of (5)
- priests
- and played their trumpets, including
Nehemiah 12:36

Shemaiah, and Azarel, Milalai, Gilalai, Maai, Nethanel and Judah, Hanani...David...And Ezra (ULT)
Shemaiah, Azarel, Milalai, Gilalai, Maai, Nethanel, Judah, and Hanani...that King David...had played many years previously...And Ezra (UST)

These are the names of males. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ezra the scribe was in front of them

“Ezra the scribe was leading them”

Translation Words - ULT

- the scribe
- and his brothers
- God
- David
- And Ezra

Translation Words - UST

- the scribe
- Some associates of Zechariah also marched and played trumpets, including
- God
- that King David...had played many years previously
- And Ezra
Nehemiah 12:37

the Fountain Gate…the...Water Gate (ULT)
the Fountain Gate…the Water Gate (UST)

These are the names of openings in the wall.

Translation Words - ULT

• David
• David (2)
• the...Gate
• the...Gate
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• David
• David (2)
• Gate
• Gate
• of the royal palace of

ULT

37 And by the Fountain Gate, and before them, they went up on the stairs of the city of David, by the stairway to the wall upon the house of David, and to the east Water Gate.

UST

37 When they reached the Fountain Gate, they went up the steps of the tower called the City of David, past the location of the royal palace of David, and then to the wall at the Water Gate, on the east side of the city.
Nehemiah 12:38

And the...choir (ULT)
The...group of those who were singing and thanking Yahweh (UST)

And I went after (ULT)
I followed them (UST)

Nehemiah followed them.

the Tower of Ovens (ULT)
the Tower of the Ovens (UST)

This is the name of a tall structure where people kept watch for danger. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Broad Wall (ULT)
the Broad Wall (UST)

This is a name for part of the wall.

Translation Words - ULT
• the people

Translation Words - UST
• the people
Nehemiah 12:39

and the Tower of Hananel and the Tower of the Hundred (ULT)
the Tower of Hananel, the Tower of the Hundred Soldiers (UST)

These are the names of tall structures where people kept watch for danger. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Ephraim Gate…the Old Gate…the Fish Gate…the…Gate…the Sheep…at the Gate of the Guard (ULT)
past the Ephraim Gate…the Jeshanah Gate…the Fish Gate…Gate…the Sheep…near the gate into the temple (UST)

These are the names of openings in the wall.

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- the…Gate
- the…Gate
- the…Gate
- Gate (2)
- at the Gate of
- the Guard
- the Sheep

Translation Words - UST

- Ephraim
- past the…Gate
- Gate
- Gate
- Gate (2)
- near…gate
- the…into the temple
- the Sheep
Nehemiah 12:40

and I (ULT)
I...also stood in our places (UST)

Nehemiah is speaking here. Alternate translation: “I, Nehemiah, also took my place”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• in the house of
• the officials

Translation Words - UST

• God
• the house of
• those leaders who were

ULT
40 And two choirs stood in the house of God, and I, and half of the officials with me.

UST
40 Both the groups reached the house of God as they were singing and thanking him. They stood in their places there. I and half of those leaders who were with me also stood in our places.
Nehemiah 12:41

Eliakim, Maaseiah, Miniamin, Micaiah, Elioenai, Zechariah, Hananiah (ULT)
Eliakim, Maaseiah, Miniamin, Micaiah, Elioenai, Zechariah, and Hananiah (UST)

These are the names of males who were the priests at that time. (See: How to Translate Names)

with trumpets (ULT)
All of them were blowing trumpets (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) only the first seven priests listed from Eliakim to Hananiah carried trumpets or 2) all 15 priests listed from Eliakim to Ezer carried trumpets.

Translation Words - ULT

• And the priests
• with trumpets

Translation Words - UST

• My group included the priests
• All of them were blowing trumpets
Nehemiah 12:42

and Maaseiah, and Shemaiah, and Eleazar, and Uzzi, and Jehohanan, and Malkijah, and Elam, and Ezer (ULT)

Others who were blowing trumpets included Maaseiah, Shemaiah, Eleazar, Uzzi, Jehohanan, Malkijah, Elam, and Ezer (UST)

These are the names of males who were the priests at that time. (See: How to Translate Names)

and Jezrahiah (ULT)

with Jezrahiah (UST)

This is the name of a male who was the leader of the singers.

and...made themselves heard (ULT)
sang (UST)

“sang loudly”
Nehemiah 12:43

had made them rejoice with...joy (ULT)
had caused us to be...happy (UST)

“rejoice greatly”

And the joy of Jerusalem could be heard far away (ULT)
People far away could hear the noise that we made there in Jerusalem (UST)

“The joy of Jerusalem” here is a metonymy for “the sound that the people of Jerusalem made.” This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “people far away from Jerusalem could hear the sound that the people of Jerusalem made as they celebrated” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• Jerusalem
• And they rejoiced
• had made them rejoice
• with...joy
• rejoiced
• the joy of
• the sacrifices

Translation Words - UST

• God
• Jerusalem
• We men all rejoiced
• had caused us to be
• happy
• rejoiced
• the noise that we made there in
• sacrifices

ULT
43 And they offered sacrifices that day; the sacrifices were great. And they rejoiced, for God had made them rejoice with great joy. And moreover the women and the children rejoiced. And the joy of Jerusalem could be heard far away.

UST
43 We offered many sacrifices that day. We men all rejoiced because God had caused us to be very happy. The women and the children also rejoiced. People far away could hear the noise that we made there in Jerusalem.
Nehemiah 12:44

And on that day men were appointed over (ULT)
On that day we appointed men to be in charge of...They
(UST)

This can be stated in active form. It is not clear who appointed the
men. Alternate translation: “they appointed men to be in charge”
(See: Active or Passive)

for the contributions (ULT)
the money (UST)

things the people gave to the priests

over...For Judah rejoiced...the priests and over the
Levites (ULT)
to be in charge of...The people of Judah did all this
because they were so happy...the priests and about the
descendants of Levi (UST)

It seems that the people appointed the men because the people of
Judah were grateful for the priests and Levites who were serving.

who were standing (ULT)
serving in the temple (UST)

The Levites and priests were not just standing, they were serving in
their roles. The meaning can be made explicit. Alternate translation:
“who were standing before them serving God” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the law
- who were standing
- And...were appointed
- the...for the priests
- the priests
- Judah
- the Levites
- for the firstfruits
- for the contributions
- the cities
- rejoiced
- for the offerings
- over
- over (2)

Translation Words - UST

- in the law
- serving in the temple
we appointed...They
• for the priests
• the priests
• The people of Judah
• the descendants of Levi
• and the grain
• the money
• near the cities
• they were so happy
• and the food
• to be in charge of
• about (2)
Nehemiah 12:45

and the gatekeepers (ULT)
and the gatekeepers (UST)

These were people assigned to each gate, responsible to control access to the city or temple, as well as to open and close the gates at times and for reasons set by the administrator. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- their God
- purification
- by David
- Solomon
- and the gatekeepers

Translation Words - UST

- his son
- God
- to purify things
- King David
- and...Solomon
- and the gatekeepers

ULT
45 And they kept the duties of their God, and the duties of purification, and the singers and the gatekeepers, as instructed by David, Solomon his son.

UST
45 The priests and the descendants of Levi served God in their rituals to purify things, and the singers and the gatekeepers also did their work as King David and his son Solomon had declared that they should do.
Nehemiah 12:46

there were directors of singers (ULT)
there was someone to lead the singers (UST)

This sentence tells why the people did what they did in Nehemiah 12:45 and gives us more information about the time when David told people how to worship at the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

• to God
• David
• and Asaph
• there were directors of
• praise

Translation Words - UST

• God
• David was king
• and Asaph was in charge of the temple musicians
• there was someone to lead
• to praise

ULT
46 For long ago, in the days of David and Asaph, there were directors of singers, and songs of praise, and thanksgiving to God.

UST
46 We did all this because in the days of old, when David was king and Asaph was in charge of the temple musicians, there was someone to lead the singers, and they sang songs to praise and thank God.
Nehemiah 12:47

in the days of Zerubbabel (ULT)
During the time when Zerubbabel governed (UST)

Zerubbabel was a descendant of King David and one of the governors in the region of Judah.

gave the assigned portions (ULT)
governed...contributed (UST)

“All Israel set aside the portion”

for the sons of Aaron (ULT)
to the priests, who were descendants of Aaron the first Supreme Priest (UST)

the priests in Israel, who descended from Aaron, the brother of Moses

Translation Words - ULT

- set it aside
- for the sons of
- And they set it aside
- Israel
- Aaron
- for the Levites
- and the Levites
- Nehemiah
- Zerubbabel
- and the gatekeepers

Translation Words - UST

- gave a tenth of that
- to the priests, who were descendants of
- They gave a tenth of their crops
- the Israelite people, they all
- Aaron the first Supreme Priest
- to the descendants of Levi
- and the descendants of Levi
- that I
- Zerubbabel governed
- and temple gatekeepers

ULT
47 And in the days of Zerubbabel and in the days of Nehemiah, all Israel gave the assigned portions for the singers and the gatekeepers, the portion of the day in its day. And they set it aside for the Levites, and the Levites set it aside for the sons of Aaron.

12:14 ¹ Many modern versions, including the ULT and UST, have Malluk as a correction for Malluki in the Hebrew text. The correct form of this name appears in Neh. 12:2.

12:17 ² The expression ...of Miniamin is incomplete, because no leader of that family is named in the Hebrew text.

UST
47 During the time when Zerubbabel governed, and during the time that I governed the Israelite people, they all contributed the food that the singers and temple gatekeepers needed each day. They gave a tenth of their crops to the descendants of Levi, and the descendants of Levi gave a tenth of that to the priests, who were descendants of Aaron the first Supreme Priest.
Nehemiah 13

Nehemiah 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Nehemiah returns to Jerusalem

Nehemiah was eager to make sure that the Jews kept their promise to obey the law. When he returned from Persia, he found many things wrong: one of the store rooms in the temple had been converted into a guest room for Tobiah, the Levites had not received their portions for working in the temple, people were working on the Sabbath, and many had married heathen wives. (See: promise, promised, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law and temple and Sabbath)
Nehemiah 13:1

in the ears of the people (ULT)
to the people (UST)

“so that the people could hear it”

shall enter...into the assembly of God, forever (ULT)
should...join...ever...the Israelite people when they gathered together to worship God (UST)

“should ever come into the assembly of God”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- or Moabite
- Moses
- Ammonite
- the people
- into the assembly of

Translation Words - UST

- to worship God
- or from the tribe of Moab
- that God gave to Moses
- from the tribe of Ammon
- the people
- the Israelite people when they gathered together

ULT

1 On that day it was read in the scroll of Moses, in the ears of the people, and it was found to be written in it, that no Ammonite or Moabite shall enter into the assembly of God, forever.

UST

1 On that day, someone read to the people from a scroll containing the law that God gave to Moses and, while reading, came to the place where the law says that no one from the tribe of Ammon or from the tribe of Moab who worshiped other gods should ever join the Israelite people when they gathered together to worship God.
Nehemiah 13:2

For (ULT)
The reason for that was because (UST)

“They could not come into the assembly because”

Translation Words - ULT
  • into a blessing
  • the sons of
  • our God
  • to curse them
  • the curse
  • Israel
  • Balaam

Translation Words - UST
  • into a blessing
  • to the Israelites while the Israelites were going through their areas after leaving Egypt
  • our God
  • to influence him to curse
  • that attempt to curse Israel
  • to the Israelites while the Israelites were going through their areas after leaving Egypt
  • to Balaam

ULT
2 For they had not met the sons of Israel with bread and with water, and they had hired Balaam against them to curse them. But our God turned the curse into a blessing.

UST
2 The reason for that was because the people of Ammon and the people of Moab did not give any food or water to the Israelites while the Israelites were going through their areas after leaving Egypt. Instead, the people of Ammon and Moab paid money to Balaam to influence him to curse the Israelites. But our God turned that attempt to curse Israel into a blessing.
Nehemiah 13:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• the law
• they separated
• from Israel

Translation Words - UST

• that law
• they sent
• away

ULT
3 And so it was, when they heard the law, they separated everyone of mixed descent from Israel.

UST
3 So when the people heard that law, they sent away all the people whose ancestors had come from other countries.
Nehemiah 13:4

Eliashib the priest...was appointed over (ULT)
Eliashib the priest had been in charge (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “they appointed Eliashib the priest” or “the leaders appointed Eliashib the priest” (See: Active or Passive)

related to Tobiah (ULT)
but he was a relative of Tobiah (UST)

“Eliashib and Tobiah worked closely together”

Eliashib...Tobiah (ULT)
Eliashib...of Tobiah (UST)

These are the names of men.

Translation Words - ULT

• our God
• the priest
• in the house of

Translation Words - UST

• the temple
• the priest
• the temple
Nehemiah 13:5

And he made for him a large room (ULT)
He allowed Tobiah to use a large room (UST)

“And Eliashib prepared a large storeroom for Tobiah to use”

and the gatekeepers (ULT)
and the gatekeepers (UST)

people assigned to each gate, responsible to control access to the city or temple, as well as to open and close the gates at times and for reasons set by the administrator. See how you translated this in Nehemiah 7:1.

Translation Words - ULT

• instructed
• for the priests
• for the Levites
• and the gatekeepers
• and the contributions
• and the purified oil
• the frankincense
• the wine
• offerings
• the grain

Translation Words - UST

• that God had commanded the people to bring
• the priests
• to the descendants of Levi
• and the gatekeepers
• also the offerings for
• and olive oil
• and the incense
• and wine
• the grain offerings
• grain
And in all this I was not in Jerusalem (ULT)
During that time I was not in Jerusalem (UST)

“During the time all this was happening, I was away from Jerusalem”

I was not (ULT)
I was not (UST)

Here “I” refers to Nehemiah.

Translation Words - ULT

• Babylon
• Artaxerxes
• in Jerusalem
• king of
• the king
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• of Babylonia
• that Artaxerxes
• in Jerusalem
• was the king
• the king
• the king

ULT
6 And in all this I was not in Jerusalem. For in the thirty-second year of Artaxerxes, king of Babylonia, I went to the king. And at the end of the days I asked leave from the king, to return to Jerusalem.

UST
6 During that time I was not in Jerusalem, because it was the thirty-second year that Artaxerxes was the king of Babylonia, and I had gone back to report to the king what I had been doing. After I had been there a while, I requested the king to allow me to return to Jerusalem.
Nehemiah 13:7

a storeroom in the courts of the house of God (ULT)
a room in the temple courtyard (UST)

This was a room which had previously been purified to store offering supplies (Nehemiah 13:5).

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• about the evil
• to Jerusalem
• in the courts of
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• temple
• an evil thing
• in Jerusalem
• in the...courtyard
• temple

ULT
7 and I came to Jerusalem. Then I understood about the evil that Eliashib had done with Tobiah by making for him a storeroom in the courts of the house of God.

UST
7 When I arrived in Jerusalem, I learned that Eliashib had done an evil thing by allowing Tobiah to use a room in the temple courtyard.
Nehemiah 13:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- and...family

ULT

8 And my anger came upon me exceedingly and I threw all the furnishings of the house of Tobiah out from the storeroom.

UST

8 That grieved me very much, and I threw out of that room everything that belonged to Tobiah and his family.
Nehemiah 13:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- and they purified
- and the incense
- and I put back
- the offerings
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- the temple
- that they perform a ritual cleansing...to make...pure again
- and incense
- And I also ordered that...should be put back
- all the grain offerings
- the temple

ULT
9 And I gave orders, and they purified the storerooms, and I put back in them the articles of the house of God, the offerings, and the incense.

UST
9 Then I commanded that they perform a ritual cleansing of that room to make it pure again. And I also ordered that all the equipment used in the temple and all the grain offerings and incense should be put back in that room, where they belonged.
And I learned that the assigned portions of the Levites had not been given, and they—the Levites and the singers doing the work—had been driven away, each man to his own field.

I also learned that the singers and the other descendants of Levi who were responsible for the temple services had left Jerusalem and returned to their own fields, because the people had stopped giving to the descendants of Levi their tithe of the yearly harvest.

The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. This can also be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the people had not been bringing into the storerooms their tithes and offerings of food for the temple priests” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

and they—the Levites and the singers doing the work—had been driven away, each man to his own field (ULT) the singers and the other descendants of Levi who were responsible for the temple services had left Jerusalem and returned to their own fields, because (UST)

“the Levites and the singers who did the work had left the temple, each one going to his own field”

Translation Words - ULT
- the Levites
- the Levites
- And I learned

Translation Words - UST
- to the descendants of Levi
- and the other descendants of Levi
- I also learned
Nehemiah 13:11

Why is the house of God neglected (ULT)
Why have you neglected the work of the temple (UST)

Nehemiah uses a rhetorical question to challenge or even ridicule the officials who had not done their work. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have neglected the house of God!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- and I stationed them
- is...neglected
- the officials
- at
- And I rebuked
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- the work of the temple
- and told them to do
- have you neglected
- the officials
- their work again
- So I rebuked
- the work of the temple

ULT
11 And I rebuked the officials and I said, “Why is the house of God neglected?” And I assembled them and I stationed them at their posts.

UST
11 So I rebuked the officials and said to them, “Why have you neglected the work of the temple? Then I brought the descendants of Levi and the singers back to the temple, and told them to do their work again."
Nehemiah 13:12

Then all Judah (ULT)
Then all the people of Judah (UST)

The name of the land is a metonym for the people of the land. This is probably a generalization. Alternate translation: “all the people who lived in Judah” (See: Metonymy and Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- to the storerooms
- and the oil
- the grain

Translation Words - UST

- the people of Judah
- to the temple storerooms
- and olive oil
- grain

ULT
12 Then all Judah brought the tithe of the grain, and the wine, and the oil to the storerooms.

UST
12 Then all the people of Judah again started bringing to the temple storerooms their tithes of grain, wine, and olive oil.
Nehemiah 13:13

Shelemiah...and Zadok...and Pedaiah...was Hanan...Zaccur...Mattaniah (ULT)
Shelemiah...Zadok...and Pedaiah...Hanan...Zaccur...Mattaniah (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

they were counted as trustworthy (ULT)
everyone knew...were trustworthy (UST)

This can be translated in active form. The abstract noun “trustworthy” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “I knew that I could trust them” (See: Active or Passive and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• the scribe
• to their brothers
• of...son
• son...of (2)
• as trustworthy
• the priest
• the Levites
• the treasuries

Translation Words - UST

• the scribe
• to their associates
• the son of
• and grandson of (2)
• were trustworthy
• the priest
• the descendants of Levi
• the storerooms

ULT
13 And I set as treasurers over the treasuries Shelemiah the priest and Zadok the scribe, and Pedaiah from the Levites. On their hand was Hanan son of Zaccur son of Mattaniah, for they were counted as trustworthy. And it was theirs to apportion to their brothers.

UST
13 I appointed these men to be in charge of the storerooms; Shelemiah the priest, Zadok the scribe, and Pedaiah, one of the descendants of Levi. I also appointed Hanan the son of Zaccur and grandson of Mattaniah to assist them. I appointed these men because everyone knew that those men were trustworthy and would distribute the offerings fairly to their associates.
Nehemiah 13:14

Remember me, my God, concerning this (ULT)
My God, do not forget me...these (UST)

“My God, remember me concerning this”

Translation Words - ULT

- my God
- my God (2)
- my good deeds
- for the house of
- do...wipe out

Translation Words - UST

- My God
- for your temple (2)
- all...good deeds
- for your temple
- forget

ULT
14 Remember me, my God, concerning this, and do not wipe out my good deeds that I have done for the house of my God and in his services.

UST
14 My God, do not forget me, and do not forget all these good deeds that I have done for your temple and for the temple services!
Nehemiah 13:15

ones treading the winepresses (ULT)
pressing grapes to make wine (UST)

The word “winepresses” is a metonym for the grapes that were in the winepresses. The people were walking on grapes to get the juice out of them to make wine. Alternate translation: “walking on grapes in winepresses” (See: Metonymy)

ones treading (ULT)
pressing (UST)
walking on something to crush or press it

Translation Words - ULT
- on the Sabbath
- the Sabbath
- in Judah
- into Jerusalem
- loads
- donkeys
- the winepresses
- and figs
- wine
- grapes

Translation Words - UST
- working on the Sabbath day
- the Sabbath
- some people in Judea who were...Some were...Others were...Others were
- Jerusalem
- things
- donkeys...donkeys
- grapes to make wine
- figs
- bags of wine
- baskets of grapes

ULT
15 And in those days I saw in Judah ones treading the winepresses on the Sabbath, and ones bringing in threshed grain, and ones loading onto donkeys also wine, grapes, and figs, and all kinds of loads, and bringing them into Jerusalem on the Sabbath day. So I protested selling provisions on that day.

UST
15 During that time, I saw some people in Judea who were working on the Sabbath day. Some were pressing grapes to make wine. Others were bringing their grain and loading it on donkeys. Others were also loading bags of wine, baskets of grapes, figs, and many other things onto donkeys and bringing them into Jerusalem on the Sabbath day. I warned them not to sell food to the people of Judea on Sabbath days.
Nehemiah 13:16

And the Tyrians (ULT)
I also saw some people from the city of Tyre...there in (UST)

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• to the people of
• on the Sabbath
• Judah
• and in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

• to the descendants of
• on the Sabbath day
• Judah
• into Jerusalem
Nehemiah 13:17

What is this evil thing which you are doing, profaning the Sabbath day (ULT)
This is a very evil thing that you are doing! You are making the Sabbath day into something God never wanted it to be (UST)

Nehemiah is using a rhetorical question to scold the leaders of Judah. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You are doing an evil thing by profaning the Sabbath day.” or “God will punish you for doing this evil thing, for profaning the Sabbath day.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Sabbath
- evil
- Judah
- profaning
- the leaders of
- So I confronted

Translation Words - UST

- the Sabbath
- a…evil
- Jewish
- You are making...into something God never wanted it to be
- the...leaders
- So I rebuked
Nehemiah 13:18

Did not your fathers do this? And our God brought all this evil on us and on this city (ULT)
You know that your ancestors did these same things, and God punished our nation by bringing all this trouble to this city (UST)

Nehemiah is using these rhetorical questions to scold the leaders of Judah. These questions can be combined and translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You know that your fathers did this, and that is why God brought all this evil on us and on this city.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• our God
• Israel
• the Sabbath
• evil
• your fathers
• by profaning

Translation Words - UST

• God
• the nation of Israel...us
• for the Sabbath day
• trouble
• your ancestors
• by breaking the laws
Nehemiah 13:19

And so it was, that the gates of Jerusalem grew shadowed before the Sabbath (ULT)
So…every Friday evening…of the gates of the city when it became dark (UST)

“When the sun went down…and it was time for the Sabbath to begin”

that the doors should be shut, and I commanded that they should not open them until after the Sabbath (ULT)
they should shut the doors…I also commanded that they should not open the gates until Saturday evening (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the guards shut the doors and not open them until” (See: Active or Passive)

no load could enter (ULT)
that no one brought things to sell into the city (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one could bring in things they wanted to sell” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• I stationed
• the Sabbath
• the Sabbath
• the Sabbath
• Jerusalem
• load
• the gates of
• the gates
• at
• And…some from my servants

Translation Words - UST

• I put
• every Friday evening
• Saturday
• Sabbath…that
• the city
• things to sell
• of the gates of
• the gates
• at
• Then…some of my men…so they would make sure
Nehemiah 13:20

and merchants of all kinds of wares (ULT)
and merchants selling all kinds of things (UST)

“people who had brought many different things they wanted to sell”

Translation Words - ULT
• Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST
• the city

ULT
20 And the traders and merchants of all kinds of wares camped outside Jerusalem once or twice.

UST
20 One or two times traders and merchants selling all kinds of things camped outside the city on the night before the Sabbath day, hoping to sell something the next day.
**Nehemiah 13:21**

Why do you camp in front of the wall (ULT)
It is useless for you to camp here outside the walls on Friday night (UST)

Nehemiah uses a rhetorical question to rebuke merchants and to emphasize his command. This question can be translated as a statement. The full meaning of this statement can also be made explicit. Alternate translation: “You are camping outside the wall against what I commanded.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I will put a hand on you (ULT)
I will arrest you by force (UST)

The word “hands” is a metonym for forceful action. Alternate translation: “I will send you away by force!” or “I will remove you by force!” (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- on the Sabbath
- a hand
- time

**Translation Words - UST**

- on Sabbath days
- by force
- time
Nehemiah 13:22

Also remember me for this, my God (ULT)
My God, do not forget me, and do not forget what I have done for you (UST)

“My God, remember me concerning this also.” See how you translated a similar phrase in Nehemiah 13:14.

Translation Words - ULT
- my God
- your...faithful love
- purify themselves
- to sanctify
- Sabbath
- to the Levites
- the gates
- to guard

Translation Words - UST
- My God
- as you love me
- the ritual to purify themselves
- to ensure that...were kept holy by not allowing merchants to enter it on that Sabbath...holy
- the descendants of Levi
- the city gates
- their stations to guard
Nehemiah 13:23

Connecting Statement:
These verses introduce the action that follows.

Jews that were living with Ashdodite, Ammonite... women (ULT)
that many of the Jewish men had married women from the city of Ashdod, and from the tribe of Ammon (UST)

“Jews that had married foreign women.” God had forbidden intermarriage. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Ashdodite (ULT)
from the city of Ashdod (UST)

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ammonite, Moabite (ULT)
and from the tribe of Ammon and the tribe of Moab (UST)

These are the names of nations. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
  • Jews
  • Ashdodite
  • Moabite
  • Ammonite

Translation Words - UST
  • many of the Jewish men
  • from the city of Ashdod
  • and the tribe of Moab
  • and from the tribe of Ammon
Nehemiah 13:24

And their sons—half (ULT)
So half of their children (UST)

“As a result, half of their children”

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- And their sons
- Ashdodite
- other peoples
- other peoples

Translation Words - UST

- the language of Judah
- So...their children
- either the language that people in Ashdod speak
- whatever...their foreign parent spoke
- whatever...their foreign parent spoke
Nehemiah 13:25

I rebuked them (ULT)
So I rebuked those (UST)

“I spoke directly to them about what they had done”

and I struck some...of them (ULT)
and I struck some of them with my fists...some of them (UST)

Nehemiah hit some of them with his hands.

Then I made them swear an oath by God (ULT)
Then I forced them to make a solemn promise, knowing that God was listening (UST)

“I made them say a promise before God”

Translation Words - ULT

• to their sons
• for your sons
• by God
• and I cursed them
• I rebuked
• Then I made them swear an oath

Translation Words - UST

• to marry foreign sons
• their sons
• knowing that God was listening
• and I asked God to curse them
• So I rebuked
• Then I forced them to make a solemn promise
Nehemiah 13:26

Was it not in these Solomon king of...sinned (ULT)
I said to them, “You know that Solomon, the king of...
sinned as a result of marrying foreign women who
worshiped idols (UST)

Nehemiah uses a rhetorical question to scold the men. This can be
translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You know that
Solomon king of Israel sinned on account of these women.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
• sinned
• caused...to sin
• and...loved
• by his God
• God
• Israel
• Solomon
• And among...nations
• king of
• king
• kingship
• foreign

Translation Words - UST
• sinned
• caused...to sin
• loved
• God
• Israel
• the people of Israel
• Solomon
• of...nations
• the king of
• than any of the kings
• as the king
• his foreign
Nehemiah 13:27

And should we listen to you and do all this great evil, to offend our God by dwelling with foreign women (ULT)
I am grieved to hear this about you, that you have married foreign wives who worship idols and have committed such a great sin against our God (UST)

Nehemiah uses a rhetorical question to scold the men. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “We will not listen to you or do this great evil or act treacherously against our God by marrying foreign women.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• our God
• evil
• foreign

Translation Words - UST

• our God
• sin
• foreign...who worship idols

ULT

27 And should we listen to you and do all this great evil, to offend our God by dwelling with foreign women?

UST

27 I am grieved to hear this about you, that you have married foreign wives who worship idols and have committed such a great sin against our God!”
Nehemiah 13:28

Joiada...Eliashib...to Sanballat (ULT)
Joiada...Eliashib...of our enemy Sanballat, from the town of Beth-Horon (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Horonite (ULT)
the Supreme Priest (UST)

This refers to a person from the city of Beth Horon. (See: How to Translate Names)

So I drove him away from me (ULT)
So I forced Jehoiada to leave Jerusalem (UST)

“I chased him away” or “I made him leave Jerusalem”

Translation Words - ULT

- One of the sons of
- son of
- the high priest
- the high priest

Translation Words - UST

- One of the sons of
- the son of
- the Supreme Priest
- the...Priest
Nehemiah 13:29

Remember them (ULT)
remember those (UST)

“Think about them” or “Remember what they have done.” See how you translated a similar phrase in Nehemiah 13:14.

for defiling the priesthood, and the covenant of the priesthood and the Levites (ULT)
who have brought shame to the priesthood, and who have broken the covenant of the priesthood and of the descendants of Levi (UST)

Causing the priesthood to be dishonored and breaking the covenant is spoken of as if they made the priesthood and covenant physically unclean. Alternate translation: “they have dishonored the priesthood and broken the covenant you made with the priests and Levites” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- my God
- and the covenant
- the priesthood
- the priesthood...of
- and the Levites
- defiling

Translation Words - UST

- My God
- and who have broken the covenant
- the priesthood
- of the priesthood
- and of the descendants of Levi
- who have brought shame
Nehemiah 13:30

And I cleansed them (ULT)
I took away (UST)

“In this way I purified them”

and I made assignments for the priests and for the Levites (ULT)
I also established regulations for the priests and for the descendants of Levi, so they would know (UST)

“told the priests and Levites what they were to do”

Translation Words - ULT

• and I made
• And I cleansed them
• for the priests
• foreign

Translation Words - UST

• I also established
• I took away
• for the priests
• that was from other nations and religions

ULT

30 And I cleansed them from everything foreign, and I made assignments for the priests and for the Levites, a man to his own work,

UST

30 I took away everything from them that was from other nations and religions, I also established regulations for the priests and for the descendants of Levi, so they would know what work each of them should do.
Nehemiah 13:31

and the wood offering (ULT)
I also arranged for the people to bring the offering of wood to burn on the altar (UST)

“I arranged for a supply of wood for the wood offerings”

and the firstfruits (ULT)
and to bring the first part of what they harvested of each crop during the year (UST)

“for the offering of firstfruits at harvest time”

Remember me, my God, for good (ULT)
My God, do not forget that I have done all these things, and bless me for doing them (UST)

“Think about all I have done, my God, and bless me because of the good things I have done.” See how you translated a similar phrase in Nehemiah 13:14.

Translation Words - ULT

- my God
- appointed
- for good
- and the firstfruits

Translation Words - UST

- My God
- set
- and bless...for doing them
- and to bring the first part of what they harvested of each crop during the year
Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract Nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its weight?” could be expressed as “How much does it weigh?” or “How heavy is it?”

Examples from the Bible

...from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.
Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...from childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But being godly and content is very beneficial.

But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.

But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house have been saved...

Today God has saved the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them.

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:1; 5:6; 5:9; 7:64; 8:5; 8:6; 8:8; 8:10; 8:12; 8:13; 8:17; 13:13)
Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the ACTIVE form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the PASSIVE form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: The house was built by my father in 2010.
- PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)
This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker’s message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But
it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

**Translation Strategies**

If readers have enough **assumed knowledge** to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, **“Foxes have holes**

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, **“Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.

or:

...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

**Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For** they do not wash their hands
when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a
ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do
to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the
ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state
that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original
audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus
said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man
has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus
himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus,
he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests,
but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me,
you will live as I live.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew
11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would
punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose
people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you.
or:
At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and
Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it
knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the
speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original
speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

(Back to: Nehemiah 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:5; 1:9; Notes; 2:16; Notes; 3:13; 5:1; 5:5; 5:7; 5:8; 5:17; 6:6; 6:9; 7:73; 8:5; 8:10;
Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day! They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope they had brought with them, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter’s cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin’s pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: “their village was going to have a feast the next day;” “He once killed three wild pigs in one day;” “that they had brought with them;” and “Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin’s pig.”

Often background information uses “be” verbs like “was” and “were”, rather than action verbs. Examples of these are “Peter was the best hunter in the village” and “it was his own pig.”

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are “because,” “once,” and “had.”

A writer may use background information

• To help their listeners be interested in the story
• To help their listeners understand something in the story
• To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
• To tell the setting of a story
• Setting includes:
  ◦ where the story takes place
  ◦ when the story takes place
  ◦ who is present when the story begins
  ◦ what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
• You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
• You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. 

Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, “But some of the Pharisees said.”

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word “now” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information.

With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.
Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.

(Genesis 16:16 ULT)

“When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

“Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:11; 2:1)
Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The handbreadth was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The span or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The cubit was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The “long” cubit is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The stadium (plural, stadia) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Metric Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>handbreadth</td>
<td>8 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>span</td>
<td>23 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubit</td>
<td>46 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“long” cubit</td>
<td>54 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stadia</td>
<td>185 meters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters”, readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter”, “45 centimeters”, or “50 centimeters”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.
Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.”

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter).”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.
“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter\(^1\); its width will be two thirds of a meter\(^2\); and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

The footnotes would look like:

\(^{[1]}\) two and a half cubits  
\(^{[2]}\) one cubit and a half

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:13)
Biblical Money

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit in OT</th>
<th>Metal</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>daric</td>
<td>gold coin</td>
<td>8.4 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>various metals</td>
<td>11 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>various metals</td>
<td>33 kilograms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit in NT</th>
<th>Metal</th>
<th>Day's Wage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>denarius/denarii</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drachma</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mite</td>
<td>copper coin</td>
<td>1/64 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>4 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>silver</td>
<td>6,000 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.
The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii. (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.”

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

“The one owed five hundred silver coins, and the other owed fifty silver coins.”

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

“The one owed five hundred days’ wages, and the other owed fifty days’ wages.”

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

“The one owed five hundred denarii¹, and the other owed fifty denarii².”

The footnotes would look like:

¹ five hundred days’ wages
² fifty day’s wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

“The one owed five hundred denarii¹, and the other owed fifty denarii.”

(Luke 7:41 ULT)

¹ A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.
Biblical Weight

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight”, and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Shekels</th>
<th>Grams</th>
<th>Kilograms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>1 shekel</td>
<td>11 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bekah</td>
<td>1/2 shekel</td>
<td>5.7 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pim</td>
<td>2/3 shekel</td>
<td>7.6 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerah</td>
<td>1/20 shekel</td>
<td>0.57 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mina</td>
<td>50 shekels</td>
<td>550 grams</td>
<td>1/2 kilogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>3,000 shekels</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>34 kilograms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms”, it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms”.
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.
Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

1. **The bronze from the offering weighed** seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.
   (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

   “The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.**”

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

   “The bronze from the offering weighed **2,400 kilograms.**”

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

   “The bronze from the offering weighed **5,300 pounds.**”

4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

   “The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms).**”

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

   “The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.**
   \[1\]

   The footnote would look like:

   **Footnote:**

   1. This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:71)
Doublet

Description
We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

Reason this is a translation issue
In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible
- King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)
- ...he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)
- You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
- ...as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

Translation Strategies
If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied
(1) Translate only one of the words.
- You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
- “You have decided to prepare false things to say.”
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- King David was **old**

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

- “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- ...a lamb **without blemish**

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:10; 9:14)
Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, *nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.*

(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor *will* sinners *stand* in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and *he makes* Sirion *skip* like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, *for your comfort and salvation*; if we are comforted, *for your comfort,*...

(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:
...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, I want you to heal me so that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus...Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...May you receive grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous.

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me so that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you". The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)
When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:30; 10:31; 10:32; 10:37; 10:39)
First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

- But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

- Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “...Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

- Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

- So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.
Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant
used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “… Do you have an arm like God’s
? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “… Do you have an arm like mine?
Can you thunder with a voice like me?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you
does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:5; 2:13)
**Forms of You**

**Singular, Dual, and Plural**

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs_younum](http://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- **Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups**

**Formal and Informal**

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs_youform](http://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- **Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal**

*(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:8; 1:9; 2:17)*
Fractions

Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

For the drink offering, you must offer a third of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULT)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

a third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of parts the whole is divided into</th>
<th>Fraction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>one hundredth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>one thousandth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of parts the whole is divided into</th>
<th>Fraction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>half</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five</td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to one half of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other half, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.
The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill a third of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare a fourth of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

**Translation Strategies**

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

**Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

A third of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they divided the ocean into three parts, and one part of the ocean became blood.

then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

...then you must divide an ephah of fine flour into ten parts and divide a hin of oil into two parts. Then mix three of those parts of the flour with one of the parts of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

(2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

two thirds of a shekel

(1 Samuel 13:21 ULT)

eight grams of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UST)

three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with two liters of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UST)

(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9, ULT)

six quarts of fine flour mixed with two quarts of oil.

Hebrew Months

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as "the first month" or "the second month" refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called Nisan after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.
**Tebeth** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

**Shebat** - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

**Adar** - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

**Examples from the Bible**

- You are going out of Egypt on this day, in *the month of Abib*. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)
- You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day *in the first month of the year*, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

**Translation Strategies**

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**.)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

The examples below use these two verses.

- At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of Abib*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15 ULT)

**It will always be a statute for you that in** the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,

you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29 ULT)

(1) **Tell the number of the Hebrew month.**

At that time, you will appear before me in *the first month of the year*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

(2) **Use the months that people know.**

At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of March*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that on *the day I choose in late September* you must humble yourselves and do no work.*

(3) **State clearly what season the month occurred in.**

It will always be a statute for you that in *the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) **Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.**
It will always be a statute for you that in the day I choose in early autumn you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

[1] The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:1; 2:1; 6:15; 7:73; 8:2; 8:14; 9:1)
How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
• Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
• Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
• Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)
Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’), and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi
...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named Paul

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named Saul

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that Paul, and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:
[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.
Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
  1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
  2. The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
  3. The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses exaggeration. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

- They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULT)
- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.
- Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULT)
- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

- The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)
- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.
  - And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)
- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean exactly “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)
Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, “Everyone is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, “Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies.” (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.

(1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

**Translation Strategies**

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.

(1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame...

(Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Mark 1:5 ULT)
The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:3; 4:3; 4:12; 4:17; 8:1; 8:9; 13:12)
Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

• You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
• Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
• This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
• We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
• People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
• It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)
This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

| the one who *lifts up my head* (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

**Translation Strategies**

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

| Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT) |
| ...Look, we all belong to the same nation. |

He resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

| He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it. |

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

| I am not worthy that you should enter my house. |

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

| Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULT) |
| Be all ears when I say these words to you. |

“My eyes grow dim from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

| I am crying my eyes out |

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are not the least among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless

(1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good.”

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)
“Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”
“Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter.”
Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth..., (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of everything...
From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old

He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:6)
Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love”. This is the Topic. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the Image to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the Idea that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the Point of Comparison.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The Topic, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The Image, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The Idea, the abstract concept or quality that the physical Image brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the Image and the Topic are similar. Often, the Idea of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the Idea himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical Image to apply an abstract Idea to the speaker’s Topic.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a Topic, with at least one Point of Comparison (Idea) between the Topic and the Image. Often in metaphors, the Topic and the Image are explicitly stated, but the Idea is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the Topic and the Image and to figure out for themselves the Idea that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table leg”, “family tree”, “book leaf” (meaning a page in
a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

**Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors**

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction **UP** (the Image) often represents the concepts of **MORE** or **BETTER** (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going up,” “A highly intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going down,” and “I am feeling very low.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat up.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us go ahead with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You defend your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A flow of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

**Active Metaphors**

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.
Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central **Idea** of the metaphor, but often the **Idea** is only implied.

**Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

**Translation Principles**

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

**Examples from the Bible**

Listen to this word, *you cows of Bashan*, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you”, the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter, and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The **Idea** being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.
Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

**Translation Strategies**

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally *if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible*. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See **Simile**.
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see **Translate Unknowns** for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet. *(Mark 5:22 ULT)*

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally *if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible*. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law. *(Mark 10:5 ULT)*

> It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,
We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

(4) If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

(5) If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

(6) If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.
I will make you become fishers of men.

(Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become people who gather men.
Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

• as a shorter way of referring to something
• to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonym, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

“He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

“The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David.”
or:
“The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David.”

who warned you to flee from the wrath to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

“who warned you to flee from God’s coming punishment?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

This page answers the question: How do I translate numbers?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Translate Unknowns

**Numbers**

**Description**

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

- Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

- That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

**Translation Principles**

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

**Examples from the Bible**

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

- Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

**Translation Strategies**

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

• Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
• Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
• Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
• Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
• Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
• Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The unfoldingWord® Literal Text (ULT) and the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)
Next we recommend you learn about:

- Ordinal Numbers
- Fractions

Ordinal Numbers

Description
Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English
Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>one hundredth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>one thousandth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>twelve</td>
<td>twelfth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reason this is a translation issue:
Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible
The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaijah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row...
must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,…the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, another to Jedaiah, another to Harim,…another to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.

There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, the next to Jedaiah, the next to Harim,…the next to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of one is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the next river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the next river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The last river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,…the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,…Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Fractions

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:1; 2:1; 3:30; 5:14; 6:5; 6:15; 7:73; 8:2; 8:13; 8:14; 8:18; 9:1; 10:31)
Parallelism

Description

In parallelism two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles’ letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

| Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT) |

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God’s word teaches people how to live.

| You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT) |

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

| The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere, keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT) |

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.
I lift up my voice to Yahweh, 
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous, 
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath, 
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

**you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

(Next we recommend you learn about: Personification)

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:13)
Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

- Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

- sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

- Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

- ...sin crouches
at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...sin is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...even the winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

(Next we recommend you learn about: [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]] [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]])

(Go back to: Nehemiah 6:17; 9:32; 9:33)
Possession

Description

In common English, “possession” refers to having something, or to something that a person has. In English that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “of”, by using an apostrophe and the letter s, or by using a possessive pronoun.

- the house of my grandfather
- my grandfather’s house
- his house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership - Someone owns something.
  - My clothes - The clothes that I own
- Social relationship - Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
  - my mother - the woman who gave birth to me, or the woman who cared for me
  - my teacher - the person who teaches me
- Contents - Something has something in it.
  - a bag of clothes - a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
  - my head - the head that is part of my body
  - the roof of a house - the roof that is part of a house

Reasons this is a translation issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one possesses the other.
- Some languages do not use possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples from the Bible

Ownership - In the example below, the son owned the money.

...the younger son...wasted his money with wildly extravagant living. (Luke 15:13)

Social Relationship - In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then the disciples of John came to him..., (Matthew 9:14 ULT)

Material - In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like crowns of gold (Revelation 9:7)

Contents - In the example below, the cup has water in it.

Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole - In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at the door of the king’s palace (2 Samuel 11:9 ULT)
Part of a group - In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

To each one of us has been given a gift (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in bold print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, John baptized people.

* of John*, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me.” (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, Christ loves us.

Who will separate us from the *love of Christ*? (Romans 3:35)

Object - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, people love money.

For the *love of money* is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10 ULT)

Instrument - Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords.

then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings the *punishment of the sword* (Job 19:29 ULT)

Representation - In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their baptism represented their repentance.

As John came, he was baptizing in the wilderness and was preaching a *baptism of repentance* for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

1. Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
2. Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
3. See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other.
2. Use a verb to show how the two are related.
3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one describes the other. The adjective below is in bold print.

On their heads were something like crowns of gold
(Revelation 9:7)

"On their heads were gold
crowns"

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related. In the example below, the added verb is in bold.

...Whoever gives you a cup of water
to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

...Whoever gives you a cup that has water in it* to drink...will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on the day of wrath

(Proverbs 11:4 ULT)

Wealth is worthless on the day when God shows his wrath.* Wealth is worthless on the day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. In the example below, that verb is in bold.

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen the punishment of Yahweh your God,

, (Deuteronomy 11:2 ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen how Yahweh your God punished the people of Egypt.*

You will only observe and see the punishment of the wicked

, (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see how Yahweh punishes the wicked*.

...you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit

, (Acts 2:38 ULT)

...you will receive the Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you*.

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:2; 3:15)
Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are “I”, “you”, “he”, “it”, “this”, “that”, “himself”, “someone”, and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - Exclusive and Inclusive "We"
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw himself
  in the mirror. - The word “himself” refers to John.
Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- I saw the house that John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man who built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- Have you seen this here?
- Who is that over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to anyone
- Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.
- They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:1)
Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, “Is this how you insult God's high priest?” (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

- Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)
  
  Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

- Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
  
  God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

- Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)
  
  Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.
Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, “Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?” If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number.

**Simile**

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

**Description**

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were *like sheep without a shepherd*. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

**Purposes of Simile**

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

**Examples from the Bible**

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

*for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky*, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.
Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves
(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus’ disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword
(Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves
(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
(Matthew 23:37 ULT)

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard
(Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves
(Matthew 10:16 ULT)
See, I send you out among *people who will want to harm you*.

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

**How often I wanted to protect you**, but you refused!

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:11)
Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

• In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
• In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)
Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41)
Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)
Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:13)
Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...?” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
• Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul exalts the Lord." (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands...
had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:2; 2:5; 2:15; 4:4; 4:13; 6:1; 6:3; 6:9; 7:1; 9:8; 9:20; 10:37)
Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

• Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
• Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

• Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
• Keep expressions short if possible.
• Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)
People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

**Translation Strategies**

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

```
Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.
```

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

```
Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*.
```

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

```
We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
```

```
We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish
```

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

```
your sins...will be white like snow
```

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

```
your sins...will be white like milk your sins...will be white like the moon
```

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

```
Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh
```

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

```
Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.
```

**We have here only five loaves of bread**
and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

- We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

- I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

- We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- to him who made great lights

(Psalms 136:7 ULT)

- to him who made the sun and the moon

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

How to Translate Names

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:65; 8:15; 12:27)
Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priest priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: priest, Moses, Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 09:15 God warned Moses and Aaron that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- 10:05 Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- 13:09 God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- 13:11 So they (the Israelites) brought gold to Aaron and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- 14:07 They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and Aaron and said, “Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:38; 12:47)
Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:06 When Abram arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- 05:04 Then God changed Abram’s name to Abraham, which means “father of many.”
- 05:05 About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- 05:06 When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- 06:01 When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- 06:04 After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- 21:02 God promised Abraham that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:7)
adversary, enemy

Definition:
An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term "adversary" may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:
- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(See also: Nehemiah 4:11; 4:15; 5:9; 6:1; 6:16; 9:27; 9:28)
The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Nehemiah 6:7)
afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:3; 9:9)
Ai

Facts:
In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

- After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
- An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethel, Jericho)

Bible References:
- Ezra 02:27-30
- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 13:3-4
- Joshua 07:03
- Joshua 08:12

Word Data:
- Strong's: H5857

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:32)
alien, foreign, foreigner

Definition:
The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:2)
altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

• During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
• Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
• Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

• Genesis 08:20
• Genesis 22:09
• James 02:21
• Luke 11:49-51
• Matthew 05:23
• Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 03:14 After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
• 05:08 When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar.
• 13:09 A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar.
• 16:06 He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the altar to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:34)
amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H543, G281

(See also: Nehemiah 5:13; 8:6)
Ammon, Ammonite

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:02
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 02:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:10; 2:19; 4:3; 4:7; 13:1; 13:23)
Amorite

Facts:
The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:07 Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- 15:08 In the early morning they surprised the Amorite armies and attacked them.
- 15:09 God fought for Israel that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- 15:10 God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the Amorites.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:8)
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

**appoint, appointed**

**Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God's “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

**Word Data:**


armor, armory

Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: faith, Holy Spirit, peace, save, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 06:11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:22
- Nehemiah 04:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G3696, G3833

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:19; 4:16)
Artaxerxes

Facts:

Artaxerxes was a king who reigned over the Persian empire from about 464 to 424 BC.

- During Artaxerxes' reign, the Israelites from Judah were in exile in Babylon, which was under the control of Persia at that time.
- Artaxerxes allowed Ezra the priest and other Jewish leaders to leave Babylon and go back to Jerusalem to teach the Israelites the Law of God.
- Later during this time, Artaxerxes also allowed his cupbearer Nehemiah to return to Jerusalem to lead the Jews in rebuilding the walls surrounding the city.
- Because Babylon was under the rule of Persia, Artaxerxes was sometimes called the "king of Babylon."
- Note that Artaxerxes is not the same person as Xerxes (Ahasuerus).

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahasuerus, Babylon, cupbearer, Ezra, Nehemiah, Persia)

Bible References:

- Ezra 04:7-8
- Ezra 07:1-5
- Nehemiah 02:01
- Nehemiah 13:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H783

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:1; 5:14; 13:6)
Asaph

Facts:
Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: descendant, harp, lute, prophet, psalm, trumpet)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 06:39-43
- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- Nehemiah 02:08
- Psalm 050:1-2

Word Data:
- Strong's: H623

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:8; 7:44; 11:17; 12:46)
Ashdod, Azotus

Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- The Greek name for this city was Azotus. It was one of the cities where the evangelist Philip preached the gospel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Joppa, Philip, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 05:1-3
- Acts 08:40
- Amos 01:8
- Joshua 15:45-47
- Zechariah 09:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H795, G108

(Go back to: Nehemiah 4:7; 13:23; 13:24)
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:
The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

• In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
• Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

• In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

• Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
• When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
• The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
• A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 08:14
• Acts 07:38
• Ezra 10:12-13
• Hebrews 12:22-24
• Leviticus 04:20-21
• Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

• Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:7; 5:13; 7:66; 8:2; 8:13; 8:17; 8:18; 9:1; 13:1)

555 / 833
**Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire**

**Facts:**

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 07:11-13

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:03** The Assyrians gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to Assyria.
- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H804, H1121

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:32)
atonement, atone, atoned

Definition:
The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people's sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ's death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone's sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, forgive, propitiation, reconcile, redeem)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 04:20
- Numbers 05:08
- Numbers 28:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3722, H3725, G2643

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:33)
awe, awesome

Definition:

The term “awe” refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

- The term “awesome” describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
- The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were “awesome” or “awe-inspiring.”
- Typical human responses showing awe of God’s presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: fear, glory)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:21
- Genesis 28:16-17
- Hebrews 12:28
- Psalm 022:23
- Psalms 147:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H366, H1481, H3372, H6206, H7227, G2124

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:5; 4:14; 9:32)
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:01
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:02
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 01:11
- Matthew 01:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:06 About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah. Babylon was a powerful empire.
- 20:07 But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against Babylon. So, the Babylonians came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- 20:09 Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- 20:11 About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated Babylon.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:6; 13:6)
Balaam

Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: bless, Canaan, curse, donkey, Euphrates River, Jordan River, Midian, Moab, Peor)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:05
- Revelation 02:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G903

(Go back to: Nehemiah 13:2)
Bashan

Facts:
Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel's wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:13
- Amos 04:01
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 09:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1316

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:22)
Beersheba

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

• The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
• The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abimelech, Abraham, Hagar, Ishmael, Jerusalem, oath)

Bible References:

• 1 Samuel 03:20
• 2 Samuel 17:11
• Genesis 21:14
• Genesis 21:31
• Genesis 46:01
• Nehemiah 11:30

Word Data:

• Strong's: H884

(Go back to: Nehemiah 11:27; 11:30)
Benjamin, Benjamite

Facts:
Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:
- Strong's: H1144, G958

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:23; 11:4; 11:7; 11:31; 11:36)
Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: Caleb, David, Micah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- John 07:42
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 02:16
- Ruth 01:02
- Ruth 01:21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:02 David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem.
- 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of Bethlehem.
- 23:04 Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- 23:06 “The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H376, H672, H1035, G965

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:26)
bind, bond, bound

Definition:
The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

• To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
• In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
• The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
• In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
• The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
• A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
• The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
• A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
• For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:
• The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
• Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
• A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
• The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
• Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
• The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
• To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
• To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
• Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:
• Leviticus 08:07

Word Data:

(Go back to: Nehemiah 6:18; 9:17)
bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:
To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:07 God saw that it was good and he blessed them.
- 01:15 God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He blessed them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- 01:16 So God rested from all he had been doing. He blessed the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- 04:04 “I will make your name great. I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be blessed because of you.”
- 04:07 Melchizedek blessed Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth bless Abram.”
- 07:03 Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau.
• **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: Nehemiah 8:6; Notes: 9:5; 11:2; 13:2)
blot out, wipe out

Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person's name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God's Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone's name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 07:23
- Psalm 051:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4229, H8045, G1813

(Go back to: Nehemiah 4:5; 13:14)
bow and arrow, a bow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term “arrow” is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:16
- Habakkuk 03:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 02:04
- Psalms 058:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G5115

(Go back to: Nehemiah 4:13; 4:16)
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Definition:
To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:
- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: Nehemiah 8:6)
bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

• When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
• Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
• Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
• The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
• The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

• Acts 02:46
• Acts 27:35
• Exodus 16:15
• Luke 09:13
• Mark 06:38
• Matthew 04:04
• Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(See also: Nehemiah 5:14; 5:18; 9:15)
brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:15; 5:18; 13:15; 13:19)
burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:
A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:
- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:33)
camel

Definition:
A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unkowns)

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, clean)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H1581, G2574

(See back to: Nehemiah 7:69)
Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term “Canaan” or the “land of Canaan” also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:05 He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of Canaan.
- 04:06 When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- 04:09 “I give the land of Canaan to your descendants.”
- 05:03 “I will give you and your descendants the land of Canaan as their possession and I will be their God forever.”
- 07:08 After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:8; 9:24)
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:2; 1:3; 4:4; 7:6; 8:17)
Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:4-5
- Ezekiel 01:01
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:7)
chief

Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: chief priests, priest, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:32)
command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:


confess, confession

Definition:
To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

• The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
• The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
• James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
• The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
• Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
• Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, testimony)

Bible References:

• 1 John 01:8-10
• 2 John 01:7-8
• James 05:16
• Leviticus 05:5-6
• Matthew 03:4-6
• Nehemiah 01:6-7
• Philippians 02:9-11
• Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:6; Notes; 9:2)
consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:
To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:
- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: holy, pure, sanctify)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:1; 12:47)
court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms “court yard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “court yard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, king, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:09
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:26
- Psalms 065:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:25; 8:16; 13:7)
covenant

Definition:
In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

584 / 833
Examples from the Bible stories:

• 04:09 Then God made a covenant with Abram. A covenant is an agreement between two parties.
• 05:04 “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac.”
• 06:04 After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
• 07:10 The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
• 13:02 God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey my voice and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
• 13:04 Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
• 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
• 21:05 Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the New Covenant.
• 21:14 Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
• 38:05 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”
• 48:11 But God has now made a New Covenant that is available to everyone. Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any people group can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:5; 9:8; 9:32; 13:29)
**covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love**

**Definition:**

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: covenant, faithful, grace, Israel, people of God, promise)

**Bible References:**

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:5; 9:17; 9:32; 13:14; 13:22)
**cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox**

**Definition:**

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:12; 10:36)
cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: call, plead)

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:4; 9:27; 9:28)
cupbearer

Definition:

In Old Testament times, a “cupbearer” was a king’s servant who was given the task of bringing the king his cup of wine, usually tasting the wine first to make sure it had not been poisoned.

- The literal meaning of this term is “cup bringer” or “someone who brings the cup.”
- A cupbearer was known for being very trustworthy and loyal to his king.
- Because of his trusted position, a cupbearer would often have influence in the decisions the ruler made.
- Nehemiah was the cupbearer for King Artaxerxes of Persia during the time when some of the Israelites were in captivity in Babylon.

(See also: Artaxerxes, Babylon, captive, Persia, Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:3-5
- Nehemiah 01:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8248

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:11)
curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:09 God said to the snake, “You are cursed!”
- 02:11 “Now the ground is cursed, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- 04:04 “I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you.”
- 39:07 Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God curse me if I know this man!”
- 50:16 Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:


(See also: Nehemiah 10:29; 13:2; 13:25)
Darius

Facts:

Darius was the name of several kings of Persia. It is possible that “Darius” was a title rather than a name.

- “Darius the Mede” was the king who was tricked into having the prophet Daniel thrown into a lion’s den as punishment for worshiping God.
- “Darius the Persian” helped facilitate the reconstruction of the temple in Jerusalem during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Persia, Babylon, Daniel, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- Ezra 04:4-6
- Haggai 01:01
- Nehemiah 12:22
- Zechariah 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1867, H1868

(Go back to: Nehemiah 12:22)
David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the “Son of David” because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:02 God chose a young Israelite named David to be king after Saul. David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 17:03 David was also a great soldier and leader. When David was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- 17:04 Saul became jealous of the people's love for David. Saul tried many times to kill him, so David hid from Saul.
- 17:05 God blessed David and made him successful. David fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- 17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 17:09 David ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was. David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, David followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh's declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:


(See also: Nehemiah 5:12; 8:8; 8:18; 9:3)
dedicate, dedication, established, devoted

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem's repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: commit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Kings 07:51
- 1 Timothy 04:05
- 2 Chronicles 02:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 02:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G1456, G1457

(Go back to: Nehemiah 12:27)
defile, defiled

Definition:
The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: clean, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:08
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:04
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:64; 13:29)
delight

Definition:

The term “delight” means great pleasure or great joy.

• To “delight in” something means to "take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
• When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
• The expression “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands.”
• The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
• The phrase “delight himself in” means “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
• The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
• An expression such as “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

Bible References:

• Proverbs 08:30
• Psalm 001:02
• Psalms 119:69-70
• Song of Solomon 01:03

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:25)
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: judge, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another deliverer.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many deliverers who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:27; 9:28)
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

• A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
• To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
• The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
• The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
• A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: authority, evil, sin, obey)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 13:21
• Acts 26:19
• Colossians 03:07
• Luke 01:17
• Luke 06:49
• Psalms 089:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 02:11 God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and disobeyed me.”
• 13:07 If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
• 16:02 Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
• 35:12 “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never disobeyed you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:26)
dominion

Definition:
The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:28; 9:37)
**donkey, mule**

**Definition:**

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:69; 13:15)
Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to Egypt. Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to _Egypt _ to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to Egypt with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in Egypt.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:9; 9:18)
Elam, Elamites

Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites,” and they lived in a region that was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- Acts 02:09
- Ezra 08:4-7
- Isaiah 22:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5867, H5962, G1639

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:12; 7:34)
elder, older, old

Definition:
The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Back to: Nehemiah 2:8; 12:44)
Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: synecdoche)
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to "the hill country of Ephraim" or "the mountains of Ephraim."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

(Go back to: Nehemiah 8:16; 12:39)
evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- 03:01 After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent.
- 03:02 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among wicked people.
- 04:02 God saw that if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.
- 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- 14:02 They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- 17:01 But then he (Saul) became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- 18:11 In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil.
- 29:08 The king was so angry that he threw the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- 45:02 They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak evil things about Moses and God!”
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.
Word Data:


ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the sheep will be scattered.’”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:1; 3:32; 5:18; 12:39)
exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:
To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, worship, glory, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:5)
exile, exiled

Definition:
The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:6)
Ezra

Facts:

Ezra was an Israelite priest and expert in Jewish law who recorded the history of the Israelites’ return to Jerusalem from Babylon where Israel had been held captive for 70 years.

- Ezra recorded this part of Israel's history in the biblical book of Ezra. He may also have written the book of Nehemiah, since these two books had originally been one single book.
- When Ezra returned to Jerusalem he re-established the Law, since the Israelites had stopped obeying the Sabbath laws and had intermarried with women who practiced pagan religions.
- Ezra also helped rebuild the temple, which had been destroyed by the Babylonians when they captured Jerusalem.
- There are two other men named Ezra mentioned in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, exile, Jerusalem, law, Nehemiah, temple)

Bible References:

- Ezra 07:06
- Nehemiah 08:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H250, H5830, H5831

(Go back to: Nehemiah 8:1; 8:2; 8:4; 8:5; 8:6; 8:9; 8:13; 12:1; 12:13; 12:26; 12:33; 12:36)
face, facial

Definition:
The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:2; 2:3)
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:8; 7:2; 9:8; 9:13; 9:33; 13:13)
famine

Definition:
The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:3)
fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he fasted for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** “For example, I fast two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:4; 9:1)
favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:
The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor with someone” means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include "approval" or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:5)
fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term “dread” refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or, “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or, “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:11; 2:2; 4:14; 5:9; 5:15; 6:9; 6:13; 6:14; 6:19; 7:2)
**feast, feasting**

**Definition:**

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: Nehemiah 8:14; 8:18; 10:33)*
**fig**

**Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

**Bible References:**

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

*(Go back to: Nehemiah 13:15)*
**fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot**

**Definition:**

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:3; 2:3; 2:13; 2:17; 9:12; 9:19)
firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, son)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:36)
firstfruits

Definition:
The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 02:03
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:35; 10:37; 12:44; 13:31)
flesh

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:5)
flock, herd

Definition:
In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.”

(See also: goat, cow, pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:


(See back to: Nehemiah 10:36)
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

• Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
• This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
• When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
• Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

• This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
• In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
• Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
• The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning."
• If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

• Genesis 50:17
• Numbers 14:17-19
• Deuteronomy 29:20-21
• Joshua 24:19-20
• 2 Kings 05:17-19
• Psalms 025:11
• Psalms 025:17-19
• Isaiah 55:6-7
• Isaiah 40:02
• Luke 05:21
• Acts 08:22
• Ephesians 04:31-32
• Colossians 03:12-14
• 1 John 02:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 07:10 But Esau had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
• 13:15 Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would forgive the people. God listened to Moses and forgave them.
• 17:13 David repented of his sin and God forgave him.
• 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me?”

I forgave your debt because you begged me.

Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:17)
forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:
The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

• When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
• When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
• This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
• The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

• Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
• To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
• The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
• It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 06:11-13
• Daniel 11:29-30
• Genesis 24:27
• Joshua 24:16-18
• Matthew 27:45-47
• Proverbs 27:9-10
• Psalms 071:18

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,
frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: Bethlehem, learned men)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:28-29
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Matthew 02:11-12
- Numbers 05:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, G3030

(Go back to: Nehemiah 13:5; 13:9)
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:
The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces” or “that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17
Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:36; 10:35; 10:37)
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:
A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:
- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:
- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

Gibeon, Gibeonite

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: Gilgal, Jericho, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:29
- 1 Kings 03:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:12-13
- Joshua 09:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:06 But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the Gibeonites, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- 15:07 Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- 15:08 So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the Gibeonites.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:7; 7:25)
Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:22
- 1 Samuel 11:01
- Amos 01:03
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:63)
Gilgal

Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

• At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
• Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
• There were also several other places called “Gilgal” in the Old Testament.
• The word “gilgal” means “circle of stones,” perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
• In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as “the gilgal.” This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Elijah, Elisha, Jericho, Jordan River)

Bible References:

• 1 Samuel 07:15-17
• 2 Kings 02:1-2
• Hosea 04:15
• Judges 02:01

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H1537

(Go back to: Nehemiah 12:29)
**gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around**

**Definition:**

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

(See back to: Nehemiah 4:18)
Girgashites

Facts:

The Girgashites were a people group living near the Sea of Galilee in the land of Canaan.

- They were descendants of Ham's son Canaan and so were one of the many people groups who were also known as “Canaanites.”
- God promised the Israelites that he would help them defeat the Girgashites and other Canaanite people groups.
- Like all the Canaanite peoples, the Girgashites worshiped false gods and did immoral things as part of that worship.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Noah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:14
- Deuteronomy 07:1
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Joshua 24:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1622

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:8)
glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:5)
God

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”

NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).

- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** “I am God Almighty. I will make a covenant with you.”
- **09:14 God** said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the Most High God who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!”
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** “Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **28:01** “There is only one who is good, and that is God.”
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **50:16** But some day God will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:


god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s gods.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false gods.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Introduction to Nehemiah; Nehemiah 12 General Notes)
gold, golden

Definition:
Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling.
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:70; 7:71; 7:72)
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:04 God saw that what he had created was good.
- 01:11 God planted the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.
- 01:12 Then God said, “It is not good for man to be alone.”
- 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 18:13 Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
• **28:01** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**'? There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

**Word Data:**


govern, government, governor, proconsul

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

• The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
• In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
• A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

• The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
• Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
• The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
• The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, king, power, province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:

• Acts 07:9-10
• Acts 23:22
• Acts 26:30
• Mark 13:9-10
• Matthew 10:18
• Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:7; 2:9; 3:7; 5:14; 5:15; 5:18; 7:65; 7:70; 8:9; 10:1; 12:26)
grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God's favor” or “God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:17; 9:31)
grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: burnt offering, guilt offering, sacrifice, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:33; 13:5; 13:9)
grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: head, wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:2; 5:3; 5:10; 5:11; 10:31; 10:39; 13:5; 13:12)
grape, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

• There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
• Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
• People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
• Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
• In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
• Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: vine, vineyard, wine)

Bible References:

• Deuteronomy 23:24
• Hosea 09:10
• Job 15:33
• Luke 06:43-44
• Matthew 07:15-17
• Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H811, H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

(Go back to: Nehemiah 13:15)
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 32:04 The man lived among the tombs in the area.
- 37:06 Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the tomb. Come and see.”
- 37:07 The tomb was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- 40:09 Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a tomb cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the tomb to block the opening.
- 41:04 He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the tomb and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the tomb were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- 41:05 When the women arrived at the tomb, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the tomb and see.” The women looked into the tomb and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:3; 2:5; 3:16)
hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

harp, harpist

Definition:
A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: David, fir, psalm, Saul (OT))

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 05:23-24
- Daniel 03:05
- Psalm 033:1-3
- Revelation 05:8

Word Data:
- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

(Go back to: Nehemiah 12:27)
head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:


heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

• To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
• The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
• The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
• The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

• Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
• Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
• If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
• Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
• The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
• The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
• Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

• 1 John 03:17
• 1 Thessalonians 02:04
• 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
• Acts 08:22
• Acts 15:09
• Luke 08:15
• Mark 02:06
• Matthew 05:08
• Matthew 22:37

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:2; 2:12; 4:6; 5:7; 6:8; 7:5; 9:8)
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:
The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:02 They even began building a tall tower to reach heaven.
- 14:11 He (God) gave them bread from heaven, called “manna.”
- 23:07 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- 29:09 Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:09 Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- 42:11 Then Jesus went up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

Hebrew

Facts:

The term “Hebrew” refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

• The specific word “Hebrew” can refer either to an individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
• The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called "Hebrew." However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term "Hebrew" probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
• In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Israelites” or "Jews." When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jew, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

• Acts 26:12-14
• Genesis 39:13-15
• Genesis 40:15
• Genesis 41:12-13
• John 05:1-4
• John 19:13
• Jonah 01:8-10
• Philippians 03:05

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H5680, G1444, G1445, G1446, G1447

(Go back to: Nehemiah 13:24)
high priest, chief priests

Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, priest, temple)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:27
- Acts 07:01
- Acts 09:01
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 03:02
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:08 No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the high priest, because God lived there.
- 21:07 The Messiah who would come would be the perfect high priest who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- 38:03 The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- 39:01 The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the high priest in order for the high priest to question him.
- 39:03 Finally, the high priest looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- 44:07 The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the high priest and the other religious leaders.
- 45:02 So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the high priest and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
• **46:01** The high priest gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.

• **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:1; 3:20; 13:28)
Hittite

Definition:
The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, foreigner, Ham, mighty, Solomon, Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:08
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:8)
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
Examples from the Bible stories:

• **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
• **09:12** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
• **13:01** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
• **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
• **22:05** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
• **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3 General Notes; 7:65; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 9:14; 10:31; 10:33; 11:1; 11:18)
**horse, warhorse, horseback**

**Definition:**

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: chariot, donkey, Solomon)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(See back to: Nehemiah 3:28)
**horseman**

**Definition:**
In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: chariot, horse)

**Bible References:**
- 1 Kings 01:05
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

**Word Data:**
- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G2460

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:9)
**house**

**Definition:**

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel's descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh's temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the thing(s) that is received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

• A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
• God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

• As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
• Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
• Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
• The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
• The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 06:09
• 1 Peter 01:04
• 2 Samuel 21:03
• Acts 07:4-5
• Deuteronomy 20:16
• Galatians 05:21
• Genesis 15:07
• Hebrews 09:15
• Jeremiah 02:07
• Luke 15:11
• Matthew 19:29
• Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 04:06 When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
• 27:01 One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
• 35:03 “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my inheritance now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820
iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: Nehemiah 4:5; 9:2)
instruct, instruction, instructors

Facts:

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: command, decree, teach)

Bible References:

- Exodus 14:04
- Genesis 26:05
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 11:01
- Proverbs 01:30

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:20)
Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 08:15 The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- 09:03 The Egyptians forced the Israelites to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- 09:05 A certain Israelite woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- 10:01 They said, “This is what the God of Israel says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- 14:12 But despite all this, the people of Israel complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- 15:09 God fought for Israel that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- 15:12 After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
- 16:16 So God punished Israel again for worshiping idols.
- 43:06 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

Jebus, Jebusite

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham’s son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:14
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:8)
Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, Jordan River, Joshua, miracle, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:01 Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of Jericho.
- 15:03 After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- 15:05 Then the walls around Jericho fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3405, G2410

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:2; 7:36)
Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

• The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
• Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
• It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
• Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
• People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

• Galatians 04:26-27
• John 02:13
• Luke 04:9-11
• Luke 13:05
• Mark 03:7-8
• Mark 03:20-22
• Matthew 03:06
• Matthew 04:23-25
• Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 17:05 David conquered Jerusalem and made it his capital city.
• 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
• 20:07 They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
• 20:12 So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
• 38:01 About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
• 38:02 After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
• 42:08 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”
• 42:11 Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419
Jew, Jewish

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham’s grandson Jacob. The word “Jew” comes from the word “Judah.”

- People began to call the Israelites “Jews” after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Babylon, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:11 The Israelites were now called Jews and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- 20:12 So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- 37:10 Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- 37:11 But the religious leaders of the Jews were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- 40:02 Pilate commanded that they write, “King of the Jews” on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus’ head.
- 46:06 Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:2; 2:16; 4:1; 4:2; 4:12; 5:1; 5:8; 5:17; 6:6; 13:23)
Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, Jericho, Moses, Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 14:04 When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- 14:06 Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- 14:08 Except for Joshua and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land.”
- 14:14 Moses was now very old, so God chose Joshua to help him lead the people.
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 15:03 After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:19; 7:7; 7:11; 7:39; 7:43; 8:17; 12:26)
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

677 / 833
• James 01:02
• 3 John 01:1-4

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy.”
- **34:04** “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with joy, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great joy. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Nehemiah 8:12; 8:17; 12:27; 12:43; 12:44)
Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

Judea

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2453

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:5; 2:7; 4:10; 5:14; 6:17; 7:6; 11:3; 11:20; 11:24)
judge, judgment

Definition:
The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term "judge" can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God's “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:16 The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- 21:08 A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always judge honestly and make the right decisions.
- 39:04 The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- 50:14 But God will judge everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.
Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:13; 9:29; 10:29)
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.”
  (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteousness)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:13)
king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term "king" might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 08:06 One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- 16:01 The Israelites had no king, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- 16:18 Finally, the people asked God for a king like all the other nations had.
- 17:05 Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became king of Israel. He was a good king, and the people loved him.
- 21:06 God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe!

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king's territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom" could be translated as “ruling" or “reigning" or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God's reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God's kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:02 God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- 18:04 God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- 18:07 Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the kingdom of Judah.
- 18:08 The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the kingdom of Israel.
- 21:08 A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:22; 12:22)
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:
The term “know” and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:


law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will

- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God's laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God's instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh's laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:07 God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 13:09 Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow his laws.
- 16:01 After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey God's laws.
- 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- 27:01 Jesus answered, "What is written in God's law?"
• 28:01 Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘good?’ There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God’s laws.”

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H3068, H4687, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: Nehemiah 8 General Notes; 8:1; 8:2; 8:3; 8:7; 8:8; 8:9; 8:13; 8:14; 8:18; Notes; 9:3; 9:26; 9:29; 9:34; 10:28; 10:29; 10:34; 10:36; 12:44; Notes; 13:3)
Levi, Levite, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, priest, sacrifice, temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

life, live, living, alive

Definition:
The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life
   • A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
   • Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
   • It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
   • The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
   • In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life
   • A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
   • The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:
   • Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
   • The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
   • The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
   • The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
   • The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
   • When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
   • Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live’ or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:
   • 2 Peter 01:03
   • Acts 10:42
   • Genesis 02:07
   • Genesis 07:22
   • Hebrews 10:20
   • Jeremiah 44:02
   • John 01:04
   • Judges 02:18
   • Luke 12:23
   • Matthew 07:14
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed life into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still alive, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] life he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of life, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:3; 5:2; 9:6; 9:29)
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

• Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
• Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
• The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
• Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
• Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
• “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

• When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
• It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
• Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, righteous, true)

Bible References:

• 1 John 01:07
• 1 John 02:08
• 2 Corinthians 04:06
• Acts 26:18
• Isaiah 02:05
• John 01:05
• Matthew 05:16
• Matthew 06:23
• Nehemiah 09:12-13
• Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

• Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:12; 9:19)
livestock, animals

Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cow, ox, donkey, goat, horse, sheep)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 01:14-15
- Nehemiah 09:36-37
- Numbers 03:41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H929, H4399, H4735

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:37)
lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

• This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
• Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

• In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
• In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
• The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
• In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
• Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
• In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
• For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

• This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
• When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
• If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
• When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

• Genesis 39:02
• Joshua 03:9-11
• Psalms 086:15-17
• Jeremiah 27:04
• Lamentations 02:02
• Ezekiel 18:29
• Daniel 09:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the Lord your God.’”
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:03** This is the year of the Lord’s favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, “Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **43:09** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!”
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her masters as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:11; 3:5; 4:14; 8:10; 10:29)
lots, casting lots

Definition:

In the Bible, a “lot” is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. “Casting lots” refers to the process of using "lots" to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the "lots") were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the "lots" actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “throwing lots” or “rolling lots.” The translation of “cast” should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made “by lot,” this could be translated as “by casting lots” or “by throwing lots,” etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, priest, Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G2819, G2975

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:34; 11:1)
love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love"—some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
   - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
   - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
   - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
   - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
   - The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And love your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his love for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I love.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who loves the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) loved and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve loved each other, and they loved God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to love other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to love God more than you love anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God loves sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God loves you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:5; 13:26)
manna

Definition:
Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word “manna” means “what is it?”
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as “bread from heaven” and “grain from heaven.”

Translation Suggestions
- Other ways to translate this term could include “thin white flakes of food” or “food from heaven.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: bread, desert, grain, heaven, Sabbath)

Bible References:
- Deuteronomy 08:3
- Exodus 16:27
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- John 06:30-31
- Joshua 05:12

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H4478, G3131

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:20)
mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:16 They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and mercy to others.
- 19:17 He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- 20:12 The Persian Empire was strong but merciful to the people it conquered.
- 27:11 Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was merciful to him.”
- 32:11 But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had mercy on you.”
- 34:09 “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.’”
Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:11; 9:17; 9:19; 9:27; 9:28; 9:31)
messenger

Facts:
The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: Nehemiah 6:3)
might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:


(See these verses also: Nehemiah 1:10; 3:16; 9:11; 9:32; 11:14)
**miracle, wonder, sign**

**Definition:**
A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God's power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, apostle, sign)

**Bible References:**
- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

**Examples from the Bible stories:**
- 16:08 Gideon asked God for two signs so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- 19:14 God did many miracles through Elisha.
- 37:10 Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- 43:06 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”
• **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:10; 9:17)
Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: David, Judah, kingdom of Israel, Moab, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 07:5-6
- 1 Samuel 07:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4708, H4709

(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:15; 3:19)
Moab, Moabite

Facts:
The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

• In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
• Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:
• Genesis 19:37
• Genesis 36:34-36
• Ruth 01:1-2
• Ruth 01:22

Word Data:
• Strong's: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: Nehemiah 13:1; 13:23)
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms “mock,” ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:04
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:12 Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- 39:05 The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and mocked him.
- 39:12 The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- 40:04 Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- 40:05 The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:19; 4:1)
**Mordecai**

**Facts:**

Mordecai was a Jewish man living in the country of Persia. He was the guardian of his cousin Esther, who later became the wife of the Persian king, Ahasuerus.

- While working at the royal palace, Mordecai overheard men plotting together to kill King Ahasuerus. He reported this and the king’s life was saved.
- Some time later, Mordecai also found out about a plan to kill all the Jews in the kingdom of Persia. He advised Esther to appeal to the king to save her people.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahasuerus, Babylon, Esther, Persia)

**Bible References:**

- Esther 02:06
- Esther 03:06
- Esther 08:02
- Esther 10:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H4782

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:7)
Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 09:12 One day while Moses was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- 12:05 Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you.”
- 12:07 God told Moses to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 13:07 Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to Moses.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:7; 1:8; 8:1; 8:14; 9:14; 10:29; 13:1)
mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:
The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:4; 8:9)
name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(See back to: Nehemiah 1:9; 1:11; 7:63; 9:5; 9:7; 9:10)
nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonjews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:8; 5:9; 5:17; 6:6; 6:16; 13:26)
Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:
Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar’s leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the “Babylonian Exile.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar’s dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, Babylon, Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 01:02
- Daniel 04:04
- Ezekiel 26:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:06** The king of Judah agreed to be Nebuchadnezzar’s servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:08** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, Nebuchadnezzar’s soldiers killed the king’s sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5019, H5020

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:6)
Nehemiah

Facts:

Nehemiah was an Israelite forced to move to the Babylonian empire when the people of Israel and Judah were taken captive by the Babylonians.

- While he was the cupbearer to the Persian king, Artaxerxes, Nehemiah asked the king for permission to return to Jerusalem.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in rebuilding the walls of Jerusalem which had been destroyed by the Babylonians.
- For twelve years Nehemiah was the governor of Jerusalem before returning to the king's palace.
- The Old Testament book of Nehemiah tells the story of Nehemiah's work in rebuilding the walls and his governing of the people in Jerusalem.
- There were also other men named Nehemiah in the Old Testament. Usually the name of the father was added, to distinguish which Nehemiah was being talked about.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Artaxerxes, Babylon, Jerusalem, son)

Bible References:

- Ezra 02:1-2
- Nehemiah 01:02
- Nehemiah 10:03
- Nehemiah 12:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5166

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:1; 3:16; 7:7; 8:9; 10:1; 12:26; 12:47)
new moon

Definition:
The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, earth, festival, horn, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:05
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G3376, G3561

(See also: Nehemiah 7:73; 10:33)
noble, nobleman, royal official

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 016:1-3

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:16; 3:5; 4:14; 4:19; 5:7; 6:17; 7:5; 10:29; 13:17)
oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:
The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:12; 6:18; 10:29; 13:25)
oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:11; 10:39; 13:5; 13:12)
olive

Definition:
The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

  • Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
  • The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
  • Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
  • In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

  • 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
  • Deuteronomy 06:10-12
  • Exodus 23:10-11
  • Genesis 08:11
  • James 03:12
  • Luke 16:06
  • Psalms 052:08

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:11; 8:15; 9:25)
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

Definition:
The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

Bible References:
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5 General Notes; 9:27)
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:7; 8:18)
oversee, overseer

**Definition:**

The term “oversee” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his "flock."
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, elder, pastor, shepherd)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:02
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:01

**Word Data:**


pagan

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “pagan” was used to describe people who worshiped false gods instead of Yahweh.

- Anything associated with these people, such as the altars where they worshiped, the religious rituals they performed, and their beliefs, were also called “pagan.”
- Pagan belief systems often included the worship of false gods and the worship of nature.
- Some pagan religions included sexually immoral rituals or the killing of human beings as part of their worship.

(See also: altar, false god, sacrifice, worship, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 12:1-3
- 2 Kings 17:14-15
- 2 Kings 21:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1471, G1484

(Go back to: Nehemiah 13:26; 13:27; 13:30)
patient, patience, impatient

Definition:
The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, forgive, persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:30)
people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God's people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God's people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: Israel, people group)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2 General Notes)
people, people group,

Definition:

The terms "people" and "people group" refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term "the people" often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term "people" can can refer to a "people group" or "family" or "relatives" or "army."
- In plural form, the term "peoples" often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term "nations" is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people group" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "large family group" or "clan" or "ethnic group."
- A phrase such as "my people" could be translated as "my relatives" or "my fellow Israelites" or "my family" or "my people group," depending on the context.
- The expression "scatter you among the peoples" could also be translated as "cause you to go live with many different people groups" or "cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world."
- The term "the peoples" or "the people" could also be translated as "the people in the world" or "people groups," depending on the context.
- The phrase "the people of" could be translated as "the people living in" or "the people descended from" or "the family of," depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- "All the peoples of the earth" could be translated as "everyone living on earth" or "every person in the world" or "all people."
- The phrase "a people" could also be translated as "a group of people" or "certain people" or "a community of people" or "a family of people."

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the people groups of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”
So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.

Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all people groups!” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

Word Data:


Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the "Perezites," was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:16-18
- Genesis 13:07
- Joshua 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:8)
persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment.”

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 33:07 “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or persecution, he falls away.”
- 45:06 That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- 46:02 Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you persecute me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are persecuting me!”
- 46:04 But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has persecuted the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:11)
Persia, Persians

Definition:
Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Artaxerxes, Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Esther, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:20
- Daniel 10:13
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezekiel 27:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6539, H6540, H6542, H6543

(Go back to: Nehemiah 12:22)
Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: egypt, king)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 07:13
- Acts 07:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:07
- Genesis 41:25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 08:06 One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- 08:08 Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- 09:02 So the Pharaoh who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- 09:13 “I will send you to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- 10:02 Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:10)
praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:13 The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- 17:08 When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and praised God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- 22:07 Zechariah said, “Praise God, because he has remembered his people!
- 43:13 They (disciples) enjoyed praising God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- 47:08 They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of praise to God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:13; 9:5; 12:24; 12:46)
pray, prayer

Definition:
The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

• People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
• Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
• Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
• People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
• Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
• Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
• This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:
• 1 Thessalonians 03:09
• Acts 08:24
• Acts 14:26
• Colossians 04:04
• John 17:09
• Luke 11:1
• Matthew 05:43-45
• Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:
• 06:05 Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
• 13:12 But Moses prayed for them, and God listened to his prayer and did not destroy them.
• 19:08 Then the prophets of Baal prayed to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
• 21:07 Priests also prayed to God for the people.
• 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
• 43:13 The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and prayed with each other.
• 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:11; 2:4; 4:9; 11:17)
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:02 He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- 30:01 Jesus sent his apostles to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- 38:01 About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- 45:06 But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- 45:07 He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- 46:06 Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- 46:10 Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
• **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, *preaching* and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
• **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will *preach* the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

**Word Data:**

- **Strong’s:**
  - *preach*: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - *proclaim*: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:14; 4:20; 8:15)
priest, priesthood

Definition:
In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacred mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:
- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:
- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the priest of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was
sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.

• 19:07 So the priests of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
• 21:07 An Israelite priest was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. Priests also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, lord, power, ruler, Satan, Savior, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

Word Data:


prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:
The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 3:25; 12:39)
profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, holy, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:09
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:05
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

(Go back to: Nehemiah 13:17; 13:18)
promise, promised

Definition:
When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

• The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
• Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:
• The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
• To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:
• Galatians 03:15-16
• Genesis 25:31-34
• Hebrews 11:09
• James 01:12
• Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:
• 03:15 God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children."
• 03:16 God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his promise. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he promised and so would his people.
• 04:08 God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's promise.
• 05:04 "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise."
• 08:15 The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
• 17:14 Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his promises.
• 50:01 Jesus promised he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his promise.

Word Data:
• Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: Nehemiah 13 General Notes)
Promised Land

Facts:

The term “Promised Land” only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of “the land God promised.”

(See also: Canaan, promise)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Ezekiel 07:26-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:01 They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the Promised Land!
- 14:01 After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the Promised Land, which was also called Canaan.
- 14:02 God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- 14:14 Then God led the people to the edge of the Promised Land again.
- 15:02 The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the Promised Land.
- 15:12 After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land.
- 20:09 This period of time when God’s people were forced to leave the Promised Land is called the Exile.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

(Go back to: Introduction to Nehemiah)
**prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess**

**Definition:**

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God's messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God's message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
• 19:17 Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the prophets and sometimes even killed them.
• 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
• 43:05 "This fulfills the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’"
• 43:07 "This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’"
• 48:12 Moses was a great prophet who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: Nehemiah 6:7; 6:12; 6:14; 9:26; 9:30; 9:32)
prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: bless, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:11; 2:20; 11:6; 11:14)
**prostrate, worship**

**Definition:**
To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

**Translation Suggestions:**
- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: sacrifice, praise, honor)

**Bible References:**
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

**Examples from the Bible stories:**
- 13:04 Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- 14:02 The Canaanites did not worship or obey God. They worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- 17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 18:12 All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped idols.
- 25:07 Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- 26:02 On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of worship.
- 47:01 There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and worshiped God.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

**Word Data:**
- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: Nehemiah 8:6; 9:3; 9:6)
proud, pride, prideful

Definition:
The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, joy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:02 They were very proud, and they did not care about what God said.
- 34:10 Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:10; 9:16; 9:29)
province, provincial

Facts:

A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional,”

(See also: Asia, Egypt, Esther, Galatia, Galilee, Judea, Macedonia, Medes, Rome, Samaria, Syria)

Bible References:

- Acts 19:30
- Daniel 03:02
- Daniel 06:02
- Ecclesiastes 02:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4082, H4083, H5675, H5676, G1885

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:3; 7:6; 11:3)
provoke, provoked, provocation

Facts:
The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

• To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to “cause to become angry” or to “anger.”
• When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

Bible References:

• Ezekiel 20:27-29

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G2042, G3863, G3947, G3949, G4292

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:18; 9:26)
pure, purify, purification

Definition:
To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

Word Data:

(Go back to: Nehemiah 12:30; 12:45; 13:9; 13:22; 13:30)
queen

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, king, Persia ruler, Sheba)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 08:27
- Esther 01:17
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G938

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:6)
Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Benjamin, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:27
- 1 Samuel 02:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 02:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G4471

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:30; 11:33)
**rebels, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness**

**Definition:**

The term “rebels” means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebels” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had rebelled against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam rebelled against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also rebelled against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and rebellious people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:19; 6:6; 9:17; 9:26)
rebuke

Definition:
The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:7; 13:11; 13:17; 13:25)
redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(See back to: Nehemiah 1:10; 5:8; 5:16)
reign, rule

Definition:
The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:35)
remnant

Definition:
The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 09:12
- Ezekiel 06:8-10
- Genesis 45:07
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 04:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:72)
repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, sin, turn)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 16:02 After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites repented and asked God to rescue them.
- 17:13 David repented of his sin and God forgave him.
- 19:18 They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not repent.
- 24:02 Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- 42:08 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins.”
- 44:05 “So now, repent and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1 General Notes; Notes)
rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:


(See back to: Nehemiah 9:28)
restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:10
- Acts 03:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:08
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:6; 4:7; 4:12; 5:11; 5:12; 9:29)
Definition:
The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

**Definition:**

The term “righteousness” refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “moral good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God's laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)
Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16  
- Job 01:08  
- Psalms 037:30  
- Psalms 049:14  
- Psalms 107:42  
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11  
- Isaiah 48:1-2  
- Ezekiel 33:13  
- Malachi 02:06  
- Matthew 06:01  
- Acts 03:13-14  
- Romans 01:29-31  
- 1 Corinthians 06:09  
- Galatians 03:07  
- Colossians 03:25  
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10  
- 2 Timothy 03:16  
- 1 Peter 03:18-20  
- 1 John 01:09  
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:02 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man, living among wicked people.
- 04:08 God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed in God's promise.
- 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 23:01 Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteous man.
- 50:10 Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:8; 9:33)
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It is means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:


( Go back to: Nehemiah 2:16; 4:14; 4:19; 5:7; 5:15; 5:17; 7:5; 12:40; 13:11)
Sabbath

Definition:
The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:
- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God's day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

Bible References:
- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 13:05 “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- 26:02 Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the Sabbath, he went to the place of worship.
- 41:03 The day after Jesus was buried was a Sabbath day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:
- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

sackcloth

Definition:
Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:
- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ash, camel, goat, humble, mourn, repent, sign)

Bible References:
- 2 Samuel 03:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:05
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H8242, G4526

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:1)
**sacrifice, sacrifices, offering**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

**sacrifice**

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

**offering**

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering, peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice. God was happy with the sacrifice and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of Isaac.
13:09 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.

17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.

48:06 Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.

48:08 But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.

49:11 Because Jesus sacrificed himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 4:2; 10:34; 10:37; 10:39; 12:43; 12:44; 13:5)
Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, Galilee, Judea, Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:05
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 10:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:04 Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.
- 27:08 “The next person to walk down that road was a Samaritan. (Samaritans were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. Samaritans and Jews hated each other.)”
- 27:09 “The Samaritan then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him.”
- 45:07 He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

(Go back to: Nehemiah 4:2)
**sanctuary**

**Definition:**

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God's holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: holy, Holy Spirit, holy, set apart, tabernacle, tax, temple, )

**Bible References:**

- Amos 07:13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:03
- Hebrews 08:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:01
- Psalms 078:69

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4720, H6944, G39

(See also: Nehemiah 10:39)
scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copyng important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: law, Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(Go back to: Nehemiah 8:1; 8:4; 8:9; 8:13; 12:26; 12:36; 13:13)
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Facts:

The “Sea of Reeds” was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the “Red Sea.”

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as “Reed Sea.”

(See also: Arabia. Canaan, Egypt)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 04:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:04 When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the Red Sea.
- 12:05 Then God told Moses, “Tell the people to move toward the Red Sea.”
- 13:01 After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H5488, G2063, G2281

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:9)
seed, semen

Definition:
A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:2)
seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:4; 2:10; 5:12; 5:18; 7:64; 12:27)
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:
The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, covenant, law.)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

778 / 833
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** “I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**.”
- **29:03** “Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.’”
- **35:06** “All my father’s **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.”
- **50:04** Jesus also said, “A **servant** is not greater than his master.”

**Word Data:**

- (Servant) Strong’s: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

**set apart**

**Definition:**

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: holy, sanctify, appoint)

**Bible References:**

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:2; 10:28; 12:47; 13:3; 13:22)
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8
unfoldingWord® Translation Words

• Psalms 006:8-10
• Psalms 123:03
• 1 Timothy 05:7-8
• 1 Timothy 06:13-14
• Jeremiah 15:15-16
• Job 16:9-10
• Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:3; 2:17; 4:4; 5:9; 6:13)
**shield**

**Definition:**

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy’s weapons. To “shield” someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the “shield of faith,” which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith, obey, Satan, spirit)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 14:26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 018:35

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G2375

(See back to: Nehemiah 4:16)
**Definition:**

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
  - In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.

- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.

- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:10)
silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Scroll to: Nehemiah 5:4; 5:10; 5:11; 5:15; 7:71; 7:72)
sin offering

Definition:

The “sin offering” was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

- This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal's body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
- The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
- The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
- Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
- Jesus' death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: altar, cow, forgive, sacrifice, sin)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- Exodus 29:35-37
- Ezekiel 44:25-27
- Leviticus 05:11
- Numbers 07:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2401, H2402, H2398, H2403

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:33)
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebell ing against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are *sinful* from the time they are children.”
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their *sin* and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both *sinned* against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no *sin*. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's *sin*.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other *sinners* who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of *sins*.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your *sins*.”
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our *sins*!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to *sin*. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your *sins*, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against *sin*.

Word Data:


*(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:6; 4:5; 6:13; Notes; 9:2; 9:29; 9:37; 13:26)*
Sinai, Mount Sinai

Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as “Mount Horeb.”

- Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
- The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
- God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: desert, Egypt, Horeb, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 04:24
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 01:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:01 After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.
- 13:03 Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- 13:11 For many days, Moses was on top of Mount Sinai talking with God.
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H5514, G3735, G4614

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:13)
Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David’s sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bathsheba, David, Israel, Judah, kingdom of Israel, temple)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:14 Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him Solomon.
- 18:01 After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule. God spoke to Solomon and asked him what he wanted most. When Solomon asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. Solomon learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- 18:03 But Solomon loved women from other countries....When Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- 18:04 God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:57; 7:60; 11:3; 12:45; 13:26)
son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:08 God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- 04:09 God said, “I will give you a son from your own body.”
- 05:05 About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- 05:08 When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his son when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me.”
- 09:07 When she saw the baby, she took him as her own son.
- 11:06 God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn sons.
- 18:01 After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule.
- 26:04 “Is this the son of Joseph?” they said.
Word Data:


spear, spearmen

Definition:
A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, sword, warrior)

Bible References:
- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:19
- Nehemiah 04:12-14
- Psalm 035:03

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H1265, H2595, H3591, H6767, H7013, H7420, G3057

(Go back to: Nehemiah 4:13; 4:16; 4:21)
spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my **spirit**.”
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:20; 9:30)
**statute**

**Definition:**

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(See back to: Nehemiah 1:7; 9:13; 9:14; 10:29)
storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: consecrate, dedicate, famine, gold, grain, silver, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Psalms 033:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H214, H618, H624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G596

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:70; 7:71; 12:44; 13:12; 13:13)
strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

The terms "stronghold" and "fortress" both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. A "citadel" is a fortress inside a city. The term "fortified" describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- "Stronghold" or "fortress" could be translated as "securely strong place" or "strongly protected place."
- The term "fortified city" could be translated as "securely protected city" or "strongly built city."
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: Metaphor)
- Another figurative meaning for the term "stronghold" referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as "false strongholds."
- This term should be translated differently from "refuge," which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: false god, false god, refuge, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 10:04
- 2 Kings 08:10-12
- 2 Samuel 05:8-10
- Acts 21:35
- Habakkuk 01:10-11

**Word Data:**


(See also: Nehemiah 1:1; 2:8; 7:2)
sword, swordsman

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: Nehemiah 4:13; 4:18)
tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,

Definition:

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A “tax collector” was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person’s property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as, “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- To “pay taxes” could also be translated as to “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.” To “collect taxes” could be translated as to “receive money for the government.
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
- The phrase, “tax collectors and sinners” was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.

(See also: Jew, Rome, sin)

Bible References:

- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 03:12-13
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

34:06 He said, “Two men went to the Temple to pray. One of them was a tax collector, and the other was a religious leader.” 34:07 “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector.” 34:09 “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be...
merciful to me because I am a sinner.” 34:10 Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous.” 35:01 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.

**Word Data:**

- Tax: Strong's: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5055, G5411
- Tax Collector: Strong's: H5065, H5674, G5057, G5058

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:4)
teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 8:9)
temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple. God came and was present in the Temple, and he lived there with his people.
- 20:07 They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures.
- 20:13 When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the Temple and the wall around the city of the city and the Temple.
- 25:04 Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the Temple and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- 40:07 When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the Temple was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485
(Go back to: Nehemiah 6:10; 6:11; Notes; 10:36; 12:40; Notes; 13:14)
**testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness**

**Definition:**

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness something” could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many false witnesses who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more witnesses. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are witnesses of these things.”
- **43:07** “We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: Nehemiah 9:26; 9:29; 9:30; 9:34)
time, untimely, date

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: doublet)

(See also: age, tribulation)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:


(See back to: Nehemiah 6:1; 13:21)
to minister, ministry

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

• In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him. Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people. The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God. It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

• In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
• When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
• In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
• The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: serve, sacrifice)

Bible References:

• 2 Samuel 20:23-26
• Acts 06:04
• Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10:36; 10:39; 12:44)
transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word "trespass," but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:06
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:7)
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don't trouble her” could also be translated as “don't bother her” or “don't criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:


(See back to: Nehemiah 9:27; 9:32)
trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, assembly, earth, horn, Israel, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(Go back to: Nehemiah 4:18; 4:20; 12:35; 12:41)
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 34:06 Then Jesus told a story about people who trusted in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: Nehemiah 4 General Notes)
understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:


(Go back to: Nehemiah 8:2; 8:3; 8:7; 8:8; 8:12; 10:28)
vineyard

Definition:
A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: Metaphor)
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: grape, Israel, vine)

Bible References:
- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

(Go back to: Nehemiah 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:11; 9:25)
VOW

Definition:
A "vow" is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

• If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
• In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
• Depending on the context, the term "vow" can be translated as "solemn promise" or "solemn oath" or "promise made to God."

(See also: promise, oath)

Bible References:
• 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
• Acts 21:23
• Genesis 28:21
• Genesis 31:12-13
• Jonah 01:14-16
• Jonah 02:9-10
• Proverbs 07:14

Word Data:
• Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

(Go back to: Nehemiah 10 General Notes)
walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God's commands or God's ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:


(Show back to: Nehemiah 2:17; 5:9; 6:7; 9:12; 9:19; 10:29)
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:
The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:


wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: Nehemiah 2:1; 5:11; 5:15; 5:18; 10:37; 10:39; 13:5; 13:15)
winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God's wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, wrath)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:02
- Mark 12:01
- Matthew 21:33
- Revelation 14:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1660, H3342, H6333, G3025, G5276

(See back to: Nehemiah 13:15)
Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, Lord, Moses, reveal)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **13:05** “Do not make idols or worship them, for I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: Nehemiah 1:5; 5:13; 8:1; 8:6; 8:9; 8:10; 8:14; 9:3; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:7; 10:29; 10:34; 10:35)
Zerubbabel

Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

- One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
- A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
- Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, captive, Cyrus, Ezra, high priest, Jehoiakim, Joshua, Judah, Nehemiah, Persia, Zedekiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:19-21
- Ezra 02:1-2
- Ezra 03:8-9
- Luke 03:27-29
- Matthew 01:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2216, H2217, G2216

(Go back to: Nehemiah 7:7; 12:1; 12:47)
Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs
Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreicher
Paul Holloway
Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Trippett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook
Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community